
Lingua Latina Legenda: an open-source introduction to Latin

Work in progress for use in fall '22 courses

Daniel Libatique, Dominic Machado, Neel Smith

September 6, 2022

Contents

1	<i>Lingua Latina Legenda: an open-source introduction to Latin</i>	1
2	About this textbook	2
3	Preliminaries	3
3.1	Alphabet and pronunciation	3
3.2	The classical Latin alphabet: a quick guide	3
3.2.1	Consonant sounds	3
3.2.2	Vowels	4
3.2.3	Orthography	4
3.3	Syllables and accent	5
3.3.1	Syllables and their quantity	5
3.3.2	Accent	5
4	Inflection of verbs, nouns, pronouns, and adjectives	6
4.1	Objectives	6
4.2	Latin: an inflected language	7
4.2.1	Inflection	7
4.2.2	Function and form	7
4.3	Verbal units	8
4.4	Finite verbs	9
4.4.1	Person	9
4.4.2	Number	9
4.4.3	Tense	9
4.4.4	Mood	9
4.4.5	Voice	10
4.5	Principal parts of verbs	10
4.6	Forms of principal parts	10
4.6.1	Verb conjugations	11
4.6.2	Examples of principal parts	11
4.6.3	Looking for patterns	11

4.7	The perfect active tense	12
4.7.1	The indicative mood and narrating events in the past	12
4.7.2	Meaning of the perfect indicative	12
4.7.3	Forming and analyzing the perfect active	13
4.8	The perfect passive	14
4.8.1	Meaning of the perfect passive	14
4.8.2	Formation of the perfect passive	14
4.9	The imperfect indicative	16
4.9.1	Formation of the imperfect tense	16
4.10	Nouns	17
4.10.1	Overview of nouns	17
4.11	The genitive case	19
4.11.1	Some general uses of the genitive	19
4.12	The nominative case	19
4.13	Nouns in the nominative and genitive	20
4.13.1	TBA: add tables of ending, and worked examples from vocab list	20
4.14	Adjectives in the nominative and genitive	20
4.15	Demonstrative pronouns in the nominative and genitive	21
4.16	The personal agent of passive verbs	21
4.16.1	Means or instrument with active and passive verbs	21
4.17	Direct and indirect objects	21
4.17.1	Direct object: function of the accusative case	21
4.17.2	Indirect object: function of the dative case	21
4.18	Prepositions	22
4.19	Sentence Structures	22
4.19.1	Intransitive Sentences	22
4.19.2	Transitive Sentences	23
4.19.3	Passive Sentences	24
4.19.4	Linking Sentences	25
4.19.5	Tips for Determining Sentence Structure	25
5	Richer sentences	26
5.1	Unit Objectives	26
6	Subordination	27
6.1	Unit Objectives	27
7	Further subordination	28
7.1	Unit Objectives	28

8	Some less frequent forms	29
8.1	Objectives	29
9	Relative clauses, participles, and gerunds	30
10	Dependent clauses with the subjunctive	31
11	Reference	32
12	Regular Verbs - Paradigms	33
12.1	Indicative - Active	33
12.1.1	Present Active Indicative	33
12.1.2	Imperfect Active Indicative	34
12.1.3	Future Active Indicative	34
12.1.4	Perfect Active Indicative	34
12.1.5	Pluperfect Active Indicative	35
12.1.6	Future Perfect Active Indicative	35
12.2	Indicative - Passive	35
12.2.1	Present Passive Indicative	35
12.2.2	Imperfect Passive Indicative	36
12.2.3	Future Passive Indicative	36
12.2.4	Perfect Passive Indicative	37
12.2.5	Pluperfect Passive Indicative	37
12.2.6	Future Perfect Passive Indicative	38
12.3	Subjunctive - Active	38
12.3.1	Present Active Subjunctive	38
12.3.2	Imperfect Active Subjunctive	39
12.3.3	Perfect Active Subjunctive	39
12.3.4	Pluperfect Active Subjunctive	39
12.4	Subjunctive - Passive	40
12.4.1	Present Passive Subjunctive	40
12.4.2	Imperfect Passive Subjunctive	40
12.4.3	Perfect Passive Subjunctive	41
12.4.4	Pluperfect Passive Subjunctive	41
12.5	Infinitives	42
12.6	Gerunds and Gerundives	42

13	Deponent Verbs - Paradigms	43
13.1	Indicative - Passive (Deponent)	43
13.1.1	Present Passive Indicative	43
13.1.2	Imperfect Passive Indicative	44
13.1.3	Future Passive Indicative	44
13.1.4	Perfect Passive Indicative	44
13.1.5	Pluperfect Passive Indicative	45
13.1.6	Future Perfect Passive Indicative	45
13.2	Subjunctive - Passive (Deponent)	46
13.2.1	Present Passive Subjunctive	46
13.2.2	Imperfect Passive Subjunctive	46
13.2.3	Perfect Passive Subjunctive	47
13.2.4	Pluperfect Passive Subjunctive	47
13.3	Infinitives	48
13.4	Gerunds and Gerundives	48
14	Nouns - Paradigms	49
14.1	First Declension	49
14.1.1	<i>puella, puellae</i> , f. - girl	49
14.2	Second Declension Masculine	49
14.2.1	<i>maritus, maritī</i> , m. - husband	49
14.2.2	<i>ager, agrī</i> , m. - field	50
14.3	Second Declension Neuter	50
14.3.1	<i>exemplum, exemplī</i> , n. - example	50
14.4	Third Declension Masculine/Feminine	51
14.4.1	<i>mater, matris</i> , f. - mother	51
14.5	Third Declension Masculine/Feminine i-stem	51
14.5.1	<i>urbs, urbis</i> , f. - city	51
14.6	Third Declension Neuter	52
14.6.1	<i>nōmen, nōminis</i> , n. - name	52
14.7	Third Declension Neuter i-stem	52
14.7.1	<i>mare, maris</i> , n. - sea	52
14.8	Fourth Declension Masculine/Feminine	53
14.8.1	<i>manus, manūs</i> , f. - hand	53
14.9	Fourth Declension Neuter	53
14.9.1	<i>genū, genūs</i> , n. - knee	53
14.10	Fifth Declension Masculine/Feminine	54
14.10.1	<i>rēs, rei</i> , f. - thing, matter, situation, affair	54

14.10.2	<i>diēs, diēi</i> , m. - day	54
15	Adjectives - Paradigms	55
15.1	2-1-2 adjectives	55
15.1.1	<i>bonus, bona, bonum</i> - good	55
15.1.2	<i>pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum</i> - beautiful, handsome	56
15.2	2-1-2 - <i>ius</i> adjectives	56
15.2.1	<i>nullus, nulla, nullum</i> - no, none	56
15.3	Three-Termination Adjectives	57
15.3.1	<i>acer, acris, acre</i> - keen, sharp	57
15.4	Two-Termination Adjectives	58
15.4.1	<i>fortis, forte</i> - strong, brave	58
15.5	One-Termination Adjectives	59
15.5.1	<i>sapiēns, sapientis</i> - wise	59
15.6	Interrogative	60
15.6.1	<i>quī, quae, quod</i> - which? what?	60
15.7	Declinable Numerals	60
15.7.1	<i>ūnus, -a, -um</i> - one	60
15.7.2	<i>duo, duae, duo</i> - two	61
15.7.3	<i>trēs, tria</i> - three	61
16	Irregular Verbs - Paradigms	62
16.1	Indicative - Active	62
16.1.1	Present Active Indicative	62
16.1.2	Imperfect Active Indicative	63
16.1.3	Future Active Indicative	63
16.1.4	Perfect Active Indicative	63
16.1.5	Pluperfect Active Indicative	64
16.1.6	Future Perfect Active Indicative	64
16.2	Indicative - Passive (<i>ferō</i>)	64
16.2.1	Present Passive Indicative	64
16.2.2	Imperfect Passive Indicative	65
16.2.3	Future Passive Indicative	65
16.2.4	Perfect Passive Indicative	65
16.2.5	Pluperfect Passive Indicative	65
16.2.6	Future Perfect Passive Indicative	66
16.3	Subjunctive - Active	66
16.3.1	Present Active Subjunctive	66

16.3.2	Imperfect Active Subjunctive	66
16.3.3	Perfect Active Subjunctive	67
16.3.4	Pluperfect Active Subjunctive	67
16.4	Subjunctive - Passive (ferō)	68
16.4.1	Present Passive Subjunctive	68
16.4.2	Imperfect Passive Subjunctive	68
16.4.3	Perfect Passive Subjunctive	68
16.4.4	Pluperfect Passive Subjunctive	68
16.5	Infinitives	69
16.6	Gerunds and Gerundives	69
17	Pronouns - Paradigms	70
17.1	Demonstratives	70
17.1.1	<i>hic, haec, hoc</i> - this, these	70
17.1.2	<i>ille, illa, illud</i> - that, those	71
17.2	Intensives	71
17.2.1	<i>ipse, ipsa, ipsum</i> - the very ____, ____self	72
17.3	Personal	72
17.3.1	<i>is, ea, id</i> - he, she, it, they (3rd person)	72
17.3.2	<i>ego</i> - I, me, we, us (1st person)	73
17.3.3	<i>tū</i> - you, you all (2nd person)	73
17.4	Reflexive	74
17.4.1	1st person (myself, ourselves)	74
17.4.2	2nd person (yourself, yourselves)	74
17.4.3	3rd person (himself, herself, itself, themselves)	75
17.5	Interrogative	75
17.5.1	<i>quis, quid</i> - who? which? what?	75
17.6	Relative	76
17.6.1	<i>quī, quae, quod</i> - who, which, that	76
18	Vocabulary lists	77
19	Prepositions in Hyginus, <i>Fabulae</i>	78
20	Pronouns in Hyginus, <i>Fabulae</i>	79
21	Most frequent verbs in Hyginus, <i>Fabulae</i>	80
22	Most frequent nouns in Hyginus, <i>Fabulae</i>	83

23	Most frequent adjectives in Hyginus, <i>Fabulae</i>	86
24	Most frequent adverbs in Hyginus, <i>Fabulae</i>	87
25	Most frequent conjunctions in Hyginus, <i>Fabulae</i>	88
26	<i>Lingua Latina Legenda</i> : an open-source introduction to Latin	89
27	About this textbook	90
28	Preliminaries	91
28.1	Alphabet and pronunciation	91
28.2	The classical Latin alphabet: a quick guide	91
28.2.1	Consonant sounds	91
28.2.2	Vowels	92
28.2.3	Orthography	92
28.3	Syllables and accent	93
28.3.1	Syllables and their quantity	93
28.3.2	Accent	93
29	Inflection of verbs, nouns, pronouns, and adjectives	94
29.1	Objectives	94
29.2	Latin: an inflected language	95
29.2.1	Inflection	95
29.2.2	Function and form	95
29.3	Verbal units	96
29.4	Finite verbs	97
29.4.1	Person	97
29.4.2	Number	97
29.4.3	Tense	97
29.4.4	Mood	97
29.4.5	Voice	98
29.5	Principal parts of verbs	98
29.6	Forms of principal parts	98
29.6.1	Verb conjugations	99
29.6.2	Examples of principal parts	99
29.6.3	Looking for patterns	99
29.7	The perfect active tense	100
29.7.1	The indicative mood and narrating events in the past	100

29.7.2	Meaning of the perfect indicative	100
29.7.3	Forming and analyzing the perfect active	101
29.8	The perfect passive	102
29.8.1	Meaning of the perfect passive	102
29.8.2	Formation of the perfect passive	102
29.9	The imperfect indicative	104
29.9.1	Formation of the imperfect tense	104
29.10	Nouns	105
29.10.1	Overview of nouns	105
29.11	The genitive case	107
29.11.1	Some general uses of the genitive	107
29.12	The nominative case	107
29.13	Nouns in the nominative and genitive	108
29.13.1	TBA: add tables of ending, and worked examples from vocab list	108
29.14	Adjectives in the nominative and genitive	108
29.15	Demonstrative pronouns in the nominative and genitive	109
29.16	The personal agent of passive verbs	109
29.16.1	Means or instrument with active and passive verbs	109
29.17	Direct and indirect objects	109
29.17.1	Direct object: function of the accusative case	109
29.17.2	Indirect object: function of the dative case	109
29.18	Prepositions	110
29.19	Sentence Structures	110
29.19.1	Intransitive Sentences	110
29.19.2	Transitive Sentences	111
29.19.3	Passive Sentences	112
29.19.4	Linking Sentences	113
29.19.5	Tips for Determining Sentence Structure	113
30	Richer sentences	114
30.1	Unit Objectives	114
31	Subordination	115
31.1	Unit Objectives	115
32	Further subordination	116
32.1	Unit Objectives	116

33	Some less frequent forms	117
33.1	Objectives	117
34	Relative clauses, participles, and gerunds	118
35	Dependent clauses with the subjunctive	119
36	Reference	120
37	Regular Verbs - Paradigms	121
37.1	Indicative - Active	121
37.1.1	Present Active Indicative	121
37.1.2	Imperfect Active Indicative	122
37.1.3	Future Active Indicative	122
37.1.4	Perfect Active Indicative	122
37.1.5	Pluperfect Active Indicative	123
37.1.6	Future Perfect Active Indicative	123
37.2	Indicative - Passive	123
37.2.1	Present Passive Indicative	123
37.2.2	Imperfect Passive Indicative	124
37.2.3	Future Passive Indicative	124
37.2.4	Perfect Passive Indicative	125
37.2.5	Pluperfect Passive Indicative	125
37.2.6	Future Perfect Passive Indicative	126
37.3	Subjunctive - Active	126
37.3.1	Present Active Subjunctive	126
37.3.2	Imperfect Active Subjunctive	127
37.3.3	Perfect Active Subjunctive	127
37.3.4	Pluperfect Active Subjunctive	127
37.4	Subjunctive - Passive	128
37.4.1	Present Passive Subjunctive	128
37.4.2	Imperfect Passive Subjunctive	128
37.4.3	Perfect Passive Subjunctive	129
37.4.4	Pluperfect Passive Subjunctive	129
37.5	Infinitives	130
37.6	Gerunds and Gerundives	130

38 Deponent Verbs - Paradigms	131
38.1 Indicative - Passive (Deponent)	131
38.1.1 Present Passive Indicative	131
38.1.2 Imperfect Passive Indicative	132
38.1.3 Future Passive Indicative	132
38.1.4 Perfect Passive Indicative	132
38.1.5 Pluperfect Passive Indicative	133
38.1.6 Future Perfect Passive Indicative	133
38.2 Subjunctive - Passive (Deponent)	134
38.2.1 Present Passive Subjunctive	134
38.2.2 Imperfect Passive Subjunctive	134
38.2.3 Perfect Passive Subjunctive	135
38.2.4 Pluperfect Passive Subjunctive	135
38.3 Infinitives	136
38.4 Gerunds and Gerundives	136
39 Nouns - Paradigms	137
39.1 First Declension	137
39.1.1 <i>puella, puellae</i> , f. - girl	137
39.2 Second Declension Masculine	137
39.2.1 <i>maritus, maritī</i> , m. - husband	137
39.2.2 <i>ager, agrī</i> , m. - field	138
39.3 Second Declension Neuter	138
39.3.1 <i>exemplum, exemplī</i> , n. - example	138
39.4 Third Declension Masculine/Feminine	139
39.4.1 <i>mater, matris</i> , f. - mother	139
39.5 Third Declension Masculine/Feminine i-stem	139
39.5.1 <i>urbs, urbis</i> , f. - city	139
39.6 Third Declension Neuter	140
39.6.1 <i>nōmen, nōminis</i> , n. - name	140
39.7 Third Declension Neuter i-stem	140
39.7.1 <i>mare, maris</i> , n. - sea	140
39.8 Fourth Declension Masculine/Feminine	141
39.8.1 <i>manus, manūs</i> , f. - hand	141
39.9 Fourth Declension Neuter	141
39.9.1 <i>genū, genūs</i> , n. - knee	141
39.10 Fifth Declension Masculine/Feminine	142
39.10.1 <i>rēs, rei</i> , f. - thing, matter, situation, affair	142

39.10.2	<i>diēs, diēī</i> , m. - day	142
40	Adjectives - Paradigms	143
40.1	2-1-2 adjectives	143
40.1.1	<i>bonus, bona, bonum</i> - good	143
40.1.2	<i>pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum</i> - beautiful, handsome	144
40.2	2-1-2 - <i>īus</i> adjectives	144
40.2.1	<i>nullus, nulla, nullum</i> - no, none	144
40.3	Three-Termination Adjectives	145
40.3.1	<i>ācer, ācris, ācre</i> - keen, sharp	145
40.4	Two-Termination Adjectives	146
40.4.1	<i>fortis, forte</i> - strong, brave	146
40.5	One-Termination Adjectives	147
40.5.1	<i>sapiēns, sapientis</i> - wise	147
40.6	Interrogative	148
40.6.1	<i>quī, quae, quod</i> - which? what?	148
40.7	Declinable Numerals	148
40.7.1	<i>ūnus, -a, -um</i> - one	148
40.7.2	<i>duo, duae, duo</i> - two	149
40.7.3	<i>trēs, tria</i> - three	149
41	Irregular Verbs - Paradigms	150
41.1	Indicative - Active	150
41.1.1	Present Active Indicative	150
41.1.2	Imperfect Active Indicative	151
41.1.3	Future Active Indicative	151
41.1.4	Perfect Active Indicative	151
41.1.5	Pluperfect Active Indicative	152
41.1.6	Future Perfect Active Indicative	152
41.2	Indicative - Passive (<i>ferō</i>)	152
41.2.1	Present Passive Indicative	152
41.2.2	Imperfect Passive Indicative	153
41.2.3	Future Passive Indicative	153
41.2.4	Perfect Passive Indicative	153
41.2.5	Pluperfect Passive Indicative	153
41.2.6	Future Perfect Passive Indicative	154
41.3	Subjunctive - Active	154
41.3.1	Present Active Subjunctive	154

41.3.2	Imperfect Active Subjunctive	154
41.3.3	Perfect Active Subjunctive	155
41.3.4	Pluperfect Active Subjunctive	155
41.4	Subjunctive - Passive (ferō)	156
41.4.1	Present Passive Subjunctive	156
41.4.2	Imperfect Passive Subjunctive	156
41.4.3	Perfect Passive Subjunctive	156
41.4.4	Pluperfect Passive Subjunctive	156
41.5	Infinitives	157
41.6	Gerunds and Gerundives	157
42	Pronouns - Paradigms	158
42.1	Demonstratives	158
42.1.1	<i>hic, haec, hoc</i> - this, these	158
42.1.2	<i>ille, illa, illud</i> - that, those	159
42.2	Intensives	159
42.2.1	<i>ipse, ipsa, ipsum</i> - the very ____, ____self	160
42.3	Personal	160
42.3.1	<i>is, ea, id</i> - he, she, it, they (3rd person)	160
42.3.2	<i>ego</i> - I, me, we, us (1st person)	161
42.3.3	<i>tū</i> - you, you all (2nd person)	161
42.4	Reflexive	162
42.4.1	1st person (myself, ourselves)	162
42.4.2	2nd person (yourself, yourselves)	162
42.4.3	3rd person (himself, herself, itself, themselves)	163
42.5	Interrogative	163
42.5.1	<i>quis, quid</i> - who? which? what?	163
42.6	Relative	164
42.6.1	<i>quī, quae, quod</i> - who, which, that	164
43	Vocabulary lists	165
44	Prepositions in Hyginus, <i>Fabulae</i>	166
45	Pronouns in Hyginus, <i>Fabulae</i>	167
46	Most frequent verbs in Hyginus, <i>Fabulae</i>	168
47	Most frequent nouns in Hyginus, <i>Fabulae</i>	171

48	Most frequent adjectives in Hyginus, <i>Fabulae</i>	174
49	Most frequent adverbs in Hyginus, <i>Fabulae</i>	175
50	Most frequent conjunctions in Hyginus, <i>Fabulae</i>	176
51	<i>Lingua Latina Legenda: an open-source introduction to Latin</i>	177
52	About this textbook	178
53	Preliminaries	179
53.1	Alphabet and pronunciation	179
53.2	The classical Latin alphabet: a quick guide	179
53.2.1	Consonant sounds	179
53.2.2	Vowels	180
53.2.3	Orthography	180
53.3	Syllables and accent	181
53.3.1	Syllables and their quantity	181
53.3.2	Accent	181
54	Inflection of verbs, nouns, pronouns, and adjectives	182
54.1	Objectives	182
54.2	Latin: an inflected language	183
54.2.1	Inflection	183
54.2.2	Function and form	183
54.3	Verbal units	184
54.4	Finite verbs	185
54.4.1	Person	185
54.4.2	Number	185
54.4.3	Tense	185
54.4.4	Mood	185
54.4.5	Voice	186
54.5	Principal parts of verbs	186
54.6	Forms of principal parts	186
54.6.1	Verb conjugations	187
54.6.2	Examples of principal parts	187
54.6.3	Looking for patterns	187
54.7	The perfect active tense	188
54.7.1	The indicative mood and narrating events in the past	188

54.7.2	Meaning of the perfect indicative	188
54.7.3	Forming and analyzing the perfect active	189
54.8	The perfect passive	190
54.8.1	Meaning of the perfect passive	190
54.8.2	Formation of the perfect passive	190
54.9	The imperfect indicative	192
54.9.1	Formation of the imperfect tense	192
54.10	Nouns	193
54.10.1	Overview of nouns	193
54.11	The genitive case	195
54.11.1	Some general uses of the genitive	195
54.12	The nominative case	195
54.13	Nouns in the nominative and genitive	196
54.13.1	Endings for the nominative and genitive cases	196
54.14	Adjectives in the nominative and genitive	200
54.15	Adjectives	200
54.15.1	Dictionary entry	200
54.15.2	First- and second-declension (or 2-1-2) adjectives	200
54.15.3	Third-declension adjectives with one ending	201
54.15.4	Third-declension adjectives with two endings	202
54.16	Demonstrative pronouns in the nominative and genitive	203
54.17	The personal agent of passive verbs	203
54.17.1	Means or instrument with active and passive verbs	203
54.18	Direct and indirect objects	204
54.18.1	Direct object: function of the accusative case	204
54.18.2	Indirect object: function of the dative case	204
54.19	Prepositions	205
54.20	Sentence Structures	205
54.20.1	Intransitive Sentences	205
54.20.2	Transitive Sentences	205
54.20.3	Passive Sentences	207
54.20.4	Linking Sentences	207
54.20.5	Tips for Determining Sentence Structure	208
55	Richer sentences	209
55.1	Unit Objectives	209

56 Subordination	210
56.1 Unit Objectives	210
57 Further subordination	211
57.1 Unit Objectives	211
58 Some less frequent forms	212
58.1 Objectives	212
59 Relative clauses, participles, and gerunds	213
60 Dependent clauses with the subjunctive	214
61 Reference	215
62 Regular Verbs - Paradigms	216
62.1 Indicative - Active	216
62.1.1 Present Active Indicative	216
62.1.2 Imperfect Active Indicative	217
62.1.3 Future Active Indicative	217
62.1.4 Perfect Active Indicative	217
62.1.5 Pluperfect Active Indicative	218
62.1.6 Future Perfect Active Indicative	218
62.2 Indicative - Passive	218
62.2.1 Present Passive Indicative	218
62.2.2 Imperfect Passive Indicative	219
62.2.3 Future Passive Indicative	219
62.2.4 Perfect Passive Indicative	220
62.2.5 Pluperfect Passive Indicative	220
62.2.6 Future Perfect Passive Indicative	221
62.3 Subjunctive - Active	221
62.3.1 Present Active Subjunctive	221
62.3.2 Imperfect Active Subjunctive	222
62.3.3 Perfect Active Subjunctive	222
62.3.4 Pluperfect Active Subjunctive	222
62.4 Subjunctive - Passive	223
62.4.1 Present Passive Subjunctive	223
62.4.2 Imperfect Passive Subjunctive	223
62.4.3 Perfect Passive Subjunctive	224
62.4.4 Pluperfect Passive Subjunctive	224

62.5	Infinitives	225
62.6	Gerunds and Gerundives	225
63	Deponent Verbs - Paradigms	226
63.1	Indicative - Passive (Deponent)	226
63.1.1	Present Passive Indicative	226
63.1.2	Imperfect Passive Indicative	227
63.1.3	Future Passive Indicative	227
63.1.4	Perfect Passive Indicative	227
63.1.5	Pluperfect Passive Indicative	228
63.1.6	Future Perfect Passive Indicative	228
63.2	Subjunctive - Passive (Deponent)	229
63.2.1	Present Passive Subjunctive	229
63.2.2	Imperfect Passive Subjunctive	229
63.2.3	Perfect Passive Subjunctive	230
63.2.4	Pluperfect Passive Subjunctive	230
63.3	Infinitives	231
63.4	Gerunds and Gerundives	231
64	Nouns - Paradigms	232
64.1	First Declension	232
64.1.1	<i>puella, puellae</i> , f. - girl	232
64.2	Second Declension Masculine	232
64.2.1	<i>maritus, maritī</i> , m. - husband	232
64.2.2	<i>ager, agrī</i> , m. - field	233
64.3	Second Declension Neuter	233
64.3.1	<i>exemplum, exemplī</i> , n. - example	233
64.4	Third Declension Masculine/Feminine	234
64.4.1	<i>mater, matris</i> , f. - mother	234
64.5	Third Declension Masculine/Feminine i-stem	234
64.5.1	<i>urbs, urbis</i> , f. - city	234
64.6	Third Declension Neuter	235
64.6.1	<i>nōmen, nōminis</i> , n. - name	235
64.7	Third Declension Neuter i-stem	235
64.7.1	<i>mare, maris</i> , n. - sea	235
64.8	Fourth Declension Masculine/Feminine	236
64.8.1	<i>manus, manūs</i> , f. - hand	236

64.9	Fourth Declension Neuter	236
64.9.1	<i>genū, genūs</i> , n. - knee	236
64.10	Fifth Declension Masculine/Feminine	237
64.10.1	<i>rēs, rei</i> , f. - thing, matter, situation, affair	237
64.10.2	<i>diēs, diēi</i> , m. - day	237
65	Adjectives - Paradigms	238
65.1	2-1-2 adjectives	238
65.1.1	<i>bonus, bona, bonum</i> - good	238
65.1.2	<i>pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum</i> - beautiful, handsome	239
65.2	2-1-2 - ius adjectives	239
65.2.1	<i>nullus, nulla, nullum</i> - no, none	239
65.3	Three-Termination Adjectives	240
65.3.1	<i>acer, acris, acre</i> - keen, sharp	240
65.4	Two-Termination Adjectives	241
65.4.1	<i>fortis, forte</i> - strong, brave	241
65.5	One-Termination Adjectives	242
65.5.1	<i>sapiens, sapientis</i> - wise	242
65.6	Interrogative	243
65.6.1	<i>quī, quae, quod</i> - which? what?	243
65.7	Declinable Numerals	243
65.7.1	<i>ūnus, -a, -um</i> - one	243
65.7.2	<i>duo, duae, duo</i> - two	244
65.7.3	<i>trēs, tria</i> - three	244
66	Irregular Verbs - Paradigms	245
66.1	Indicative - Active	245
66.1.1	Present Active Indicative	245
66.1.2	Imperfect Active Indicative	246
66.1.3	Future Active Indicative	246
66.1.4	Perfect Active Indicative	246
66.1.5	Pluperfect Active Indicative	247
66.1.6	Future Perfect Active Indicative	247
66.2	Indicative - Passive (ferō)	247
66.2.1	Present Passive Indicative	247
66.2.2	Imperfect Passive Indicative	248
66.2.3	Future Passive Indicative	248
66.2.4	Perfect Passive Indicative	248

66.2.5	Pluperfect Passive Indicative	248
66.2.6	Future Perfect Passive Indicative	249
66.3	Subjunctive - Active	249
66.3.1	Present Active Subjunctive	249
66.3.2	Imperfect Active Subjunctive	249
66.3.3	Perfect Active Subjunctive	250
66.3.4	Pluperfect Active Subjunctive	250
66.4	Subjunctive - Passive (<i>ferō</i>)	251
66.4.1	Present Passive Subjunctive	251
66.4.2	Imperfect Passive Subjunctive	251
66.4.3	Perfect Passive Subjunctive	251
66.4.4	Pluperfect Passive Subjunctive	251
66.5	Infinitives	252
66.6	Gerunds and Gerundives	252
67	Pronouns - Paradigms	253
67.1	Demonstratives	253
67.1.1	<i>hic, haec, hoc</i> - this, these	253
67.1.2	<i>ille, illa, illud</i> - that, those	254
67.2	Intensives	254
67.2.1	<i>ipse, ipsa, ipsum</i> - the very ____, ____, self	255
67.3	Personal	255
67.3.1	<i>is, ea, id</i> - he, she, it, they (3rd person)	255
67.3.2	<i>ego</i> - I, me, we, us (1st person)	256
67.3.3	<i>tū</i> - you, you all (2nd person)	256
67.4	Reflexive	257
67.4.1	1st person (myself, ourselves)	257
67.4.2	2nd person (yourself, yourselves)	257
67.4.3	3rd person (himself, herself, itself, themselves)	258
67.5	Interrogative	258
67.5.1	<i>quis, quid</i> - who? which? what?	258
67.6	Relative	259
67.6.1	<i>quī, quae, quod</i> - who, which, that	259
68	Vocabulary lists	260
69	Prepositions in Hyginus, <i>Fabulae</i>	261
70	Pronouns in Hyginus, <i>Fabulae</i>	262

71	Most frequent verbs in Hyginus, <i>Fabulae</i>	263
72	Most frequent nouns in Hyginus, <i>Fabulae</i>	266
73	Most frequent adjectives in Hyginus, <i>Fabulae</i>	269
74	Most frequent adverbs in Hyginus, <i>Fabulae</i>	270
75	Most frequent conjunctions in Hyginus, <i>Fabulae</i>	271

1 *Lingua Latina Legenda*: an open-source introduction to Latin

This open-source textbook is one part of a project to develop a new two-semester introduction to Latin at the College of the Holy Cross. Our curriculum is based on these principles:

- the course emphasizes authentic examples of language, and is organized around a target text (in this textbook, the *Fabulae* of Hyginus). Instead of composing made-up Latin, we draw on the target text as much as possible.
- we follow modern principles of language pedagogy in presenting first those features of language (syntactic, morphological, lexical) that are frequent in Latin, are inherently complex, and are most different from English forms of expression and thought.
- we determine the sequence of the textbook's topics based on computational analysis of the features needed to read unaltered passages of Hyginus.
- throughout the curriculum, we link the study of Latin to reflection on contemporary issues.

Our work at Holy Cross is taking place through the college's Scholarship in Action program, and we gratefully acknowledge its support.

2 About this textbook

The current on-line version of this textbook is simultaneously being drafted and used in Latin 101 at the College of the Holy Cross in 2022-2023.

We expect to complete the first half of the textbook through chapter 5, “Subordination,” in one college semester. Chapters are not intended to take equal amounts of time. Chapter 3, “Inflection of verbs, nouns, pronouns, and adjectives” requires approximately 6 weeks, and Chapter 5, “Subordination,” about a month; the intervening Chapter 4, “Richer sentences,” covers much less new material, and provides an opportunity to apply and reinforce the fundamental material from Chapter 3. At Holy Cross, this chapter falls around the time of our fall break, so is also a useful moment to regroup and refresh material covered in the first half of the semester.

You can download a dated PDF of the current draft from <https://github.com/LinguaLatina/textbook/raw/master/pdf/l3.pdf>.

The draft of this material that was used in 2021-2022 is included in the textbook website at <https://lingualatina.github.io/textbook/2021-2022/>.

3 Preliminaries

3.1 Alphabet and pronunciation

Latin is a historical language. Although it has never been lost, and has been used continuously for thousands of years, it has survived as a language we must learn as a second language: for many centuries, there have been no native speakers of Latin. In different parts of the world today, scholars use different conventions for pronouncing Latin. Italians pronounce Latin like Italian, Germans pronounce Latin like German, and the British pronunciation of Latin is hard even to describe.

Americans generally adopt a pronunciation (presented here) that reflects our knowledge of how individual letters and combinations of letters were pronounced, but we should not imagine that we can accurately reproduce the accent of a speaker of classical Latin.

3.2 The classical Latin alphabet: a quick guide

Our alphabet derives directly from the classical Latin alphabet, and has the same letters in the same order, except that classical Latin did not have J, V or W. Instead the letters I and U were used to write both pure vowel sounds and a semi-vowel or consonant. In addition, in the classical period, K, Y and Z were used only to spell words borrowed from Greek.

3.2.1 Consonant sounds

Consonants were mostly pronounced as in modern English, with the following notes:

- C and G are always “hard” (like “cut” and “go”, never like “cease” or “gyrate”).
- S is always unvoiced (like “cease”), never a z-sound (like “ease”)
- when I spelled a consonant sound, it was pronounced like English “y”
- when U spelled a consonant sound, it was pronounced like English “w”
- the double consonant PH came to be pronounced like F

3.2.2 Vowels

The five vowels a, e, i, o and u have “pure” sounds, without any glide, any approximately:

Vowel	English example of sound	Latin word to practice
A	aha	<i>mater</i> , “mother”
E	deck	<i>terra</i> , “earth”
I	see	<i>hic</i> , “he, this person”
O	no	<i>homo</i> , “person, human being”
U	do	<i>factum</i> , “deed, accomplishment”

Vowels could be long or short; as in a modern language like German, the long version of the vowel was literally held for a longer time than the short version.

Two vowels together could be pronounced as a single *diphthong*: these originally sounded like the two vowels pronounced successively but blending the first into the second.

Try pronouncing the following diphthongs in these Latin words, taken from Hyginus *Fabulae*:

Diphthong	Latin word
ae	<i>quaero</i> , “I seek”
au	<i>autem</i> , “however”
ei	<i>Deianira</i> , a wife of Hercules
eu	<i>Theseus</i> , an Athenian hero
oe	<i>poena</i> , “penalty, punishment”
ui	<i>fluit</i> , “it flows”

3.2.3 Orthography

Like the inscriptions and papyri surviving from the classical period, many Latin manuscripts and printed editions of Latin texts use only I and U. Others use I for both vocalic and consontal sounds, but distinguish U and V. Still others use I, J, U and V. Long and short vowels were not distinguished in writing.

In this text book, when we introduce forms and new vocabulary, we will sometimes include long and short marks on vowels, but when we cite passages of Hyginus, we will normally write vowels without quantity mark,

and will use only I and U (not J and V).

3.3 Syllables and accent

3.3.1 Syllables and their quantity

Latin words have as many syllables as there are vowels or diphthongs: *Her-cu-les poe-na, quae-ro*.

A syllable is **long** if:

1. it has a long vowel or a diphthong, (e.g., the first syllable of *Rō-ma* is long)
2. or a short vowel is followed by a cluster of two consonants, (e.g., the first syllable of *Her-cu-les* is long because the *e* is followed by two consonants, *rc*)
3. except that the cluster is **short** if the cluster is *l* or *r* following one of : *b, d, g, p, t, c*, or the combination *ph* (e.g., the first syllable of *pă-tris* is short because the cluster after a short vowel is *t* followed by *r*).

Other syllables with short vowels are **short** (e.g., the second syllable of *Her-cŭ-les* is short).

3.3.2 Accent

Every Latin word with more than one syllable had a stress accent on either the next to last syllable (sometimes called the **penult**), or the one before it (the **antepenult**). The placement of the accent depends on whether the next to last syllable is long or short. If the penult is long, then it is accented; otherwise, the syllable before it is accented. Examples:

- *a-mī-cus*, “friend,” has a long penult: pronounce it *amícus*.
- *Her-cŭ-les* has a short penult: pronounce it *Hércules*

If a word has only two syllables, the penult is accented no matter what:

- pronounce *căp-ŭt*, “head” as *cáput*.

4 Inflection of verbs, nouns, pronouns, and adjectives

In Unit 1, we will look at how inflection works in the Latin language. We begin by with the concept of an inflected language and detailing how Latin's use of inflection differs from English' use of it. The key takeaway here will be that while English primarily relies on word order to convey grammatical function, Latin uses word endings to do so.

We will then move to examine the various different substantives – noun, pronoun, and adjective – and how they are inflected in Latin. In spite of their different usages, all these substantive forms have three characteristics – case, number, and grammatical gender – and these characteristics signal the substantive's role in a sentence. Consequently, we will learn how to recognize, form, analyze, and translate substantives and substantive phrases based on these characteristics. To accomplish this task, we will become familiar with the way that dictionary entries for substantives work and especially how these entries help us to understand the rules for the inflection of the particular substantive, something that is often referred to as a noun's declension.

We will build on our discussion of substantive inflection by looking at verbal inflection. We will learn about the five characteristics of verbs – person, number, tense, voice, and mood – and how these characteristics create meaning in a Latin sentence. As we did with substantives, we will learn how to recognize, form, analyze, and translate verbs based on these characteristics. Once again, we will spend time learning about dictionary entries for verbs and how the information contained therein can help us to better understand a specific verbal form. We will also learn some of the rules for verbal inflection, i.e. conjugation.

The last part of this unit will look at how Latin puts together these inflected forms at the sentence level. We will learn about different types of sentence structures found in Latin, the particular collocations of verbal and substantive forms that they use, and the way that we translate these forms.

4.1 Objectives

By the end of Unit 1, you will be able to:

- Explain the basic principles of inflection in the Latin language as well as how it differs from English
- Articulate the different features of substantives (nouns, adjectives, and pronouns) and the information that these features provide

- Recognize and produce substantive inflection patterns and analyze their grammatical function in sentences Articulate the different features of verbal forms and the information that they provide
- Recognize and produce some basic verbal inflection patterns and analyze their grammatical function in sentences
- Explain how different grammatical features of language shape the way we understand the world around us

4.2 Latin: an inflected language

4.2.1 Inflection

One of the most striking differences between Latin and English is how Latin changes the form of words to indicate their function in a sentence, where English uses word order. We call this systematic change in forms **inflection**.

English has only limited grammatical inflection today, but most English nouns have different forms indicating whether they are singular or plural: “dog” means only one, but “dogs” means more than one. Adding an -s to a noun is a regular pattern in English. We could say that -s is the regular inflectional ending to indicate the grammatical property of *number* for a noun.

Aside: English is related to Latin as part of the larger IndoEuropean family of languages, and in earlier phases of its history had a much fuller system of inflection, comparable to Latin.

In the present tense, English verbs in the *third person singular* (he, she, it) also change form to indicate number: “she says” but “they say.” We use singular verb forms only with singular subjects, and plural verb forms with plural subjects: “The dogs run,” but “The dog runs.”

Some English nouns change their form in less predictable ways: “mouse” is a singular noun, and “mice” is plural. Native speakers learn this without thinking about it; people who learn English as a second language have to memorize this as an exception to the regular pattern of adding -s to form plurals.

A few English nouns do not change their form to indicate number. “Moose” could refer to one or more of the largest mammal in the deer family. (And “deer” poses the same problem: one or more?) A native speaker of English can say, “The moose walks,” and “The moose walk.” The verb makes it clear that in the first sentence, “moose” is singular, but plural in the the second sentence.

4.2.2 Function and form

Like English, Latin uses inflection to show the number of nouns and verbs, but Latin’s system of inflection far more extensive than English.

English, for example, follows a strict word order to indicate subject, verb and direct object of a sentence. “Dog bites man” is an everyday sentence: the subject is “Dog,” and the direct object is “man.” “Man bites dog” is a headline: the man is now doing the biting, and dog is the recipient of the action.

Latin most frequently (but not always) places the verb at the end of a sentence. You could equally comfortably have a three-word sentence in the order Object-Subject-Verb, or Subject-Object-Verb, because the inflected form of the subject and the object will show clearly what role each word plays.

Aside You will probably never find the order English requires: Subject-Verb-Object! When we read Latin, and we practice our skills with Latin composition, we’ll want to consider what nuance or emphasis is expressed through different choices of Latin’s more flexible word order.

See the following introduction to inflection from Dominic Machado for Latin examples drawn from Hyginus’ *Fabulae* of how Latin inflection can work>

4.3 Verbal units

When people listen to their native language, we don’t simply hear a stream of sound: we intuitively cluster meaningful units together. When we learn to read, we similarly learn how to recognize clusters of letters and words, to “chunk” the text into meaningful units.

As you learn how to read Latin, we will emphasize this crucial skill. Rather than simply analyzing one word at a time reading left to right, you will learn how to see sentences and whole paragraphs as compositions of smaller pieces, each with a recognizable structure and meaning.

We will use the term **verbal unit** to refer to the most important underlying structure in Greek. A **verb** is a word that expresses an action or a state of being. (As Schoolhouse Rock put it decades ago, “Verb: that’s what happening.”) A verbal unit combines some form of a verb with a subject to express a complete idea.

Compared to English, Latin has an rich system of verb forms to create different kinds of verbal units. We will see, forexample, how Latin can use participles to form verbal units quite different from anything in English.

The most important verbal unit in Latin, however, is the **finite verb**. Every sentence has at least one verbal unit expressed with a finite verb plus a subject, even if these are only implied. Subjects and verbs can be implied in English, too: if someone asks you “Coffee or tea?” they are implying “Would you like coffee or tea?” a sentence with a subject (“you”) and verb (“would like”).

We have borrowed our own word “verb” from Latin grammarians. They referred to verbs with the term *verbum*, an everyday word that could mean a “sentence,” “expression,” or even “conversation.” *verbum* is a complete idea. Even if you leave out every other word of a sentence, the finite verb constitutes a complete statement.

4.4 Finite verbs

Finite verb forms have five properties: **person**, **number**, **tense**, **mood**, and **voice**. To properly identify a finite verb form, you must identify all five properties. Latin finite verb forms contain all of this information in the verb form itself. In English, we often need other words to convey some of this information, such as subject pronouns to convey the person and number, and auxiliary (or “helping”) verbs to express tense, mood, and voice.

4.4.1 Person

A verb’s person expresses the subject of the verb in relation to the “speaker” of the sentence.

1. The first person (*I* or *we* in English) subject includes the speaker.
2. The second person (*you* in English) subject is the addressee(s) of the speaker.
3. The third person (*he, she, it, they* in English) subject is a person or thing separate from the speaker and addressee.

4.4.2 Number

Number combines with person in describing the subject of verb. It indicates when the subject is **singular** or **plural**. In English, for example, the first person singular is *I* while first person plural is *we*.

4.4.3 Tense

The **tense** of a finite verb describes the time of the action. Latin has six tenses: three of them refer to present or future time, name the **present**, **future**, and **future perfect** tenses. Three other tenses refer to past time: the **imperfect**, **perfect** and **pluperfect** tenses.

4.4.4 Mood

The mood of a verb indicates the function of the expression and the nature of the action in the speaker’s conception. “Mood” and “mode” come from the same root in English: the “mood” of a verb is the “mode” in which the verb is operating.

Latin has moods:

1. the **indicative**, used to express a statement or question of a factual nature (in the eyes of the speaker) in the past, present, or future.
2. the **imperative**, used to give a command

3. the **subjunctive** mood has many uses in subordinate clauses, and is also used to express potential or possible action.

4.4.5 Voice

Voice expresses the relationship between the action of the verb and the subject. Like English, Latin has two voices: **active**, in which the subject is performing the action of the verb (“I love”), and **passive**, in which the subject is receiving the action of the verb (“I am loved”).

4.5 Principal parts of verbs

All verb forms in these many combinations of person, number, tense, mood and voice (as well as forms we will learn later, such as infinitives and participles), are formed using the verb’s **principal parts**.

English verbs have a system of principal parts, too, although native speakers may not think about them that way. In English, the principal parts can include the present tense, the past tense, and the past participle: for example, play, played, played; swim, swam, swum; go, went, gone; do, did, done.

Latin verbs have four principal parts (although for some verbs not all parts may exist). In a glossary or a lexicon, Latin verbs are listed according to the first principal part, and so if you are looking a verb up you will need to be able to move from a verb form made from any principal part to its first principal part in order to find it in the lexicon.

4.6 Forms of principal parts

Two of the principal parts, the first and third, are finite verbs in a first person singular form (“I”) of the indicative mood. We’ll use them to find the stems we can modify with endings to create finite verb forms. The other two are forms of the verb we’ll learn to use in following chapters.

1. The **first principal part** is the first person singular in the *present* active indicative (or the present passive indicative if active forms do not exist). Drop the
2. The **second principal** is an *infinitive*. (We’ll begin learning about uses of the infinitive in units 2 and 3.) You’ll look at the second principal part to find what set of endings to use with a stem.
3. The **third principal part** is the first person singular in the *perfect* active indicative. If the verb has no active forms, it has no third principal part.
4. The **fourth principal part** is a *participle*. We’ll learn in this unit how to use it create perfect passive forms.

4.6.1 Verb conjugations

Latin verbs are organized into four **conjugations**, a grouping where they share common endings. To find what conjugation a verb belongs to, look at the second principal part. In regular verbs, it will have one of four possible endings corresponding to the four conjugations.

- āre : first conjugation
- ēre : second conjugation
- ěre: third conjugation
- ĩre: fourth conjugation

4.6.2 Examples of principal parts

Principal parts are listed in order, 1-4. Memorize these the principal parts of these twelve common verbs that you will see repeatedly in reading Hyginus.

- amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus - to love
- audiō, audire, audīvī, audītus - to hear
- capiō, capere, cēpī, captus - to take, seize
- dō, dare, dedī, datus - to give
- dūcō, ducere, dūxī, ductus - to lead
- faciō, facere, fēcī, factus - to make, do
- fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitus - to flee
- habeō, habere, habuī, habitus - to have
- interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectus - to kill
- mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus - to send
- veniō, venire, vēnī, ventus - to come
- videō, videre, vīdī, visus - to see;

4.6.3 Looking for patterns

As you learn principal parts, you should practice noticing patterns and then using those patterns to help you recognize, retrieve, use, and even take an educated guess at, a principal part.

Two good examples from your unit 1 vocabulary list are amō and audiō. Regular nouns of the first conjugation will change in exactly the same ways as amō. Drop the *-āre* ending from the second principal part, and you can reliably produce the others by add *-ō* to create the first part, *-āvī* to create the third part and *-ātus* for the fourth part.

Similarly, for regular verbs of the fourth conjugation, drop the *-ire* ending from the second part, and add *-iō* for the first part, *-ivī* for the second part, and *-itus* for the fourth part.

4.7 The perfect active tense

The form of a finite verb in Latin expresses the subject as well as the verb: it is a complete verbal unit by itself. Example: the form *venit* means “he came, arrived” or “she came, arrived”; the form *venērunt* means “they came, arrived.” These are already complete sentences that do not need a separate word for “he,” “she” or “they.”

4.7.1 The indicative mood and narrating events in the past

As already described above, finite verbs have five properties: person, number, tense, mood, and voice.

The **indicative** is one of the three moods of the Latin verb. It is the mode of verb used for narrating factual events, and for that reason is frequently seen in most texts.

Latin has more than one tense for narrating events in the past, but they differ in **aspect** — that is, how to think of or picture the action the verb is representing.

- the **perfect tense** expresses an action as single and simple, without indication of its completion or continuation
- the **imperfect tense** expresses an action as continuous, started, ongoing, habitual or in any way incomplete

The choice of verb tense, then, involves not only an indication that the events happened in the past, but other information about the event. Do you want to emphasize it as a single incident? Choose the perfect indicative if so. Or do you want to indicate that it happened over a length of time, was repeated or habitual, perhaps was started but not completed? The imperfect indicative will give you the means to add those shades of meaning.

4.7.2 Meaning of the perfect indicative

The perfect indicative represents the action as *single, simple, distinct*, the equivalent of a snapshot of the action. The tense that is the closest to this idea in English is the “simple past,” the past tense formed in the active voice by adding *-ed* to the verb stem, or made by changes to the stem, with no other “helping” verbs. Examples of the “simple past” in the active voice: “He walked,” “she ran,” “they watched,” “She taught,” “they learned.”

To understand a verb form, you must take into account all five properties: person, number, tense, mood and voice. In the active voice, the subject performs the action. In the passive voice, the subject receives the action.

To form finite verbs in the perfect tense and active voice, you will use the *third* principal part. Remember that this part is already an indicative form of the perfect active, namely the first person singular. When you see a vocabulary listing like this:

veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventus, "to come"

you know that *vēnī* means “I came.”

4.7.3 Forming and analyzing the perfect active

The general pattern you’ll follow for forming inflected words is:

- find the correct stem
- apply the correct ending

The *stem* dictates what possible tenses and voices can be formed; the *ending* identifies the person, number and mood.

The third principal part is used for all forms of the perfect active. To find its stem, drop the final *-i*. For *venio*, then:

(1) *veni* → *ven-*

Let’s express “They arrived,” a complete sentence in the indicative mood. We to add the ending that expresses the third plural of the indicative, which is *-ērunt*

(2) *ven* + *ērunt* → *venērunt*

Voilà! You’ve just expressed the English idea “They arrived.” with the complete Latin sentence *venērunt*.

To analyze a Latin verb form, you can mentally reverse the process: if you isolate what ending is used with what stem, you can identify the form. When you see *venērunt* in a text, you can tell yourself that since *-ērunt* is the third plural.

All four conjugations work exactly the same way and use exactly the same endings for the perfect active indicative. Memorize this pair of endings:

Person	Singular	Plural
Third	-it	ērunt

Here is a complete example with translation using the verb *fugiō, fugēre, fūgī, fugitus* - “to flee.”

Person	Singular	Plural
Third	fugit, “he, she fled”	fugērunt, “they fled”

4.8 The perfect passive

4.8.1 Meaning of the perfect passive

In the passive voice, the subject of the verb is not the person or thing performing the action, but the one receiving it. The sentence “As a baby, Hercules killed two serpents with his hands” is in the **active voice**. “Hercules” is the subject; the verb, “killed,” is in the active voice, and “two serpents” is the direct object of the verb. In the active voice, the direct object is what receives the action.

But we could turn this around. “Two serpents were killed by Hercules” is in the **passive voice**. The grammatical subject is “two serpents,” but the serpents are not performing the action of killing: they’re receiving it. The two sentences mean approximately the same thing (although they put a slightly different emphasis on what’s important about the statement).

For both sentences, Latin will use a perfect tense, since the action of killing the serpents was a single, completed, one-time act. Hyginus uses the verb *neco*, a regular first-conjugation verb (so its principal parts are *neco, necāre, necaui, necatus*). If we want to tell the story in the active voice, Hercules will be the subject, so we would use the third person singular form, *necauit*.

But what if we wanted to turn it around, to make the serpents the subject of a passive verb, “the serpents were killed”? Let’s look at how to form the perfect passive.

4.8.2 Formation of the perfect passive

In the perfect tense, the passive voice forms are **compound forms**. They use a form of the verb “to be” together with a form of the fourth principal part, which (as we’ll learn in detail in unit 4) is a **participle**. This is actually quite similar to the way English forms the past tense in the passive: the sentence “the serpents were killed” uses a form of the form “to be” plus a participle, “killed,” to express a passive voice action in the past. Latin uses present tense forms of “to be,” however. You’ll need to memorize these two forms:

Person	Singular	Plural
Third	est	sunt

The fourth principal part of *neco* is *necatus*, and used together with the verb “to be” creates a perfect passive form: *necatus est* means, “He was killed.”

The participle changes form its depending on the subject of the sentence, by applying different endings to the stem of the fourth part. We’ll learn more about grammatical gender later in this chapter, but for now, let’s note that the distinct forms of the fourth principal part will tell us the **gender** of the subject, and will match the **number** of the verb.

To find the stem of the fourth part, drop *-us*.

(1) *necatus* -> *necat-*

Then apply one of these endings:

Gender	Singular	Plural
Masculine	-us	-i
Feminine	-a	-ae
Neuter	-um	-a

We’ll consider the serpents to be masculine, and we know we have more than one of them, so we’ll use the ending *-i*.

(2) *necat-* + *-i* -> *necati*

Our form of “to be” will also be plural, to match the number of serpents, so our final statement will be *necati sunt*.

This is actually a complete sentence in Latin: “they (masculine) were killed.” Notice that it is possible to make a statement in the passive voice without indicating who did the action. This use of the passive is much beloved by people who want to avoid taking responsibility. (Consider an English sentence like, “Mistakes were made.”)

- use 4th principal part, adjective. Will look more at adjectives in this chapter, but note:
 - gender, number in a subject form (nominative case)
 - **agreement** among 4th part, *sum* and expressed or implied subject
- memorize endings:

Examples from Hyginus

4.9 The imperfect indicative

The imperfect indicative is another way of narrating factual events in the past. As we have seen, the perfect views an action as a single action completed in the past. The imperfect, by contrast, expresses an action that is incomplete, repeated, continuous or ongoing, habitual, or in some other way *not* viewed as single and complete. To express similar ideas, English uses additional “helping” verbs: “she was going,” “he started to go,” “they used to go.”

For example, Hyginus describes the Cyclops by saying “he had one eye.” In English, we can use the simple past tense “had” to express this, but Latin makes clear that this was not a single, one-time action. It was almost a state of being: the Cyclops *always* had one eye, so Hyginus uses the imperfect in the phrase

unum oculum habebat.

habebat is the third singular of the imperfect indicative active. Let’s look at how it’s formed.

4.9.1 Formation of the imperfect tense

You form both the active and passive voice of the imperfect tense from the *second* principal part. As with the perfect active, you find the stem, and add the appropriate ending for the person, number and voice that you want.

- stem: drop -re of second part
- endings same for all conjugations.

The complete process to form the imperfect tense then looks like:

- (1) start by dropping -re from the second part:

habēre -> *habē-*

- (2) Add the appropriate ending. For this chapter, you should memorize the third person* endings for singular and plural (listed here).

habē- + -bat -> *habebat*

Person and Number	Active ending	Passive ending
third singular	-bat	-batur
third plural	-bant	-bantur

The passive voice works in exactly the same way. Hyginus tells us that one of the Argonauts was Lynceus, who had a kind of night vision superpower: he could see in the dark because “he was not hindered by any darkness.” Hyginus uses the verb *inhibebatur* in the imperfect to express the continuous, repeated event: Lynceus was *never* bothered by darkness. The verb *inhibeo*, “to restrain, prevent” is a compound of *habeo* with the following principal parts:

inhibeo, inhibēre, inhibui, inhibitus

- (1) Find the stem by dropping *-re* from the second principal part:

inhibēre -> *inhibē-*

- (2) Add the right ending. Here, we want the third singular ending for the passive voice:

inhibē- + *-batur* -> *inhibebatur*

4.10 Nouns

A **noun** names a person, animal, place, or thing (whether that “thing” is concrete or abstract). Our term again comes from Latin grammarians: “noun” comes from Latin *nomen*, which generically just means “name.”

In a clause or sentence, nouns can fulfill various functions. A noun might be the subject of the verb: the person, place, or thing doing the action the verb represents. A noun might be the object of the verb, the recipient of the verb’s action, or the indirect (or secondary) object of that action. A noun might further describe another noun, or be paired with a preposition to act adjectivally or adverbially. It may describe the means by which the action of the verb happens. Or it might name the addressee of the sentence.

In Latin, the function of the noun is represented by its **case**, and the case is indicated by the ending attached to the noun’s stem. We have already seen that endings provide a great deal of information in a verb form, and the same is true for nouns. Identifying the case of a noun is key to understanding how it is functioning in that particular sentence.

4.10.1 Overview of nouns

All Latin nouns have three properties: **gender**, **case**, and **number**.

Every noun belongs to one of three grammatical **genders**. Although the grammatical genders are named **masculine**, **feminine**, and **neuter**, these are arbitrary linguistic categories, not biological gender. (You can learn more how ancient Latin grammarians thought about biological and grammatical gender in this unit’s section on “Latin in Action.”) There is no particular reason that the noun for “river”, *flumen*, is neuter, but the noun for “island”, *insula*, is feminine.

Case indicates the function of a noun in a sentence. Cases are expressed and identified by endings. There are six cases: **nominative**, **genitive**, **dative**, **accusative**, **ablative** and **vocative**. In this module we will look at some of the most important functions indicated by the nominative, genitive, dative, accusative and ablative cases.

Noun forms have the same two **numbers** as verb forms: singular, and plural.

4.10.1.1 Dictionary entry of nouns

The dictionary entry of a noun concisely encodes all the information you need to know in order to produce or recognize all of its cases and numbers. The first part tells you its nominative singular form, the second part is its genitive singular form, and the third crucial detail is its gender(s), usually abbreviated *m*, *f* or *n*.

4.10.1.1.1 Examples of dictionary entries The following vocabulary entries are included in the required vocabulary list for this module. Let's unpack their information more fully:

- *flumen, fluminis* n., "river"
- *insula, insulae* f., "island"

The first noun has the meaning "river." Its nominative singular form is *flumen*; the genitive singular form is *fluminis*; all of its forms are neuter.

The second noun has the meaning "island." Its nominative singular form is *insula*; the genitive singular form is *insulae*; all of its forms are feminine.

You'll also see this entry:

- *cānis, cānis* m. or f., "dog"

The listing "m. or f." means that the noun can be *either* grammatically masculine *or* grammatically feminine.

4.10.1.2 Declension

We use the term **declension** to refer to a group of nouns that share the same set of endings. In the first half of this course, we will focus on three frequent declensions of nouns that make up the overwhelming majority of noun forms you will see in reading Latin. Scholars of Latin creatively refer to as the **first**, **second** and **third declensions**. You can recognize the declension of a noun by looking at the ending of its genitive singular:

- *-ae*: first declension
- *-i*: second declension
- *-is*: third declension

4.11 The genitive case

The **genitive case** is used to relate one noun to another. (In fact, this is a characteristic feature of *all* the languages in the Indo-European family that includes Latin.) While you may often find that nouns in the genitive case are translated with the English preposition “of,” it is important to understand the range of underlying ideas expressed by the genitive in Latin.

4.11.1 Some general uses of the genitive

The complicated story of Procris and her husband Cephalus illustrates some common uses of the genitive case.

- *Possession*: Diana gave to Procris a hunting dog, and Hyginus refers to the *potentia canis*. *potentia* is a nominative noun, “power, strength;” *canis* is genitive singular, “dog.” Here, the genitive expresses *possession*: the dog possessed strength or power. In these instances, we might translate the genitive into English with the preposition “of” or with the possessive marker “s,” “the dog’s strength,” or “the strength of the dog.”
- *Subjective genitive or objective genitive*: Cephalus admired the dog greatly, and Hyginus refers to the *amor canis*. *amor*, *amoris* f. means “love, admiration”. There is always an ambiguity when the noun expressing a verbal idea is modified by a second noun in the genitive case, just as there is in an English phrase like “love of God.” Does that mean that God loves someone? If so, we would say it is a **subjective genitive**, since we are interpreting the meaning of the phrase “of God” as the equivalent of the subject of a verb “to love.” But it could equally mean the love that someone feels for God. We would call that an **objective genitive**, since we are interpreting “of God” as the equivalent of a direct object in a phrase like “they love God.” In this passage of Hyginus, the context makes it clear that he is referring to Cephalus’ love for or admiration of the hunting dog, not the dog’s love for Cephalus, but grammatically the *amor canis* is identical to what a pet owner could say to refer to their faithful dog’s love.

Hyginus’ story of Erechtheus’ four daughters illustrates another common use of the genitive to refer to a group or “whole,” when the noun it modifies names part of the whole or one among the group.

- *Partitive genitive or genitive of the whole*: Erechtheus’ daughters took an oath that if *one of them* died, the others would commit suicide. Hyginus expresses this with the phrase *una eārum*. As we’ll see in this chapter, *eārum* is the feminine genitive plural form of a pronoun meaning “them”; *una* is a nominative form meaning “one woman.”

4.12 The nominative case

The **nominative case** is a naming case. Its most frequent function is to indicate the **subject** of a finite verb.

The subject of a verb will match the person and number of the verb form: a *singular* noun in the nominative case will have a third person *singular* verb form, and a nominative *plural* noun acting as the subject will match a third person *plural* verb. We use the term **agreement** to refer to this matching of grammatical properties.

Consider these examples. In his account of Theseus' adventures, Hyginus says that Theseus came to Crete:

Theseus uenit

The dictionary form for Theseus' name in Latin is "*Theseus, Thesei, m.*," so *Theseus* is nominative, singular, and masculine. *uenit*, "he came," is perfect, active and indicative; since it is in the third person singular, it *agrees* with the subject *Theseus*.

In the story of the seven heroes who fought against Thebes, Hyginus says, "The seven leaders were going there" (in order to fight),

Septem ductores ibant

ductor, ductōris, m., means "leader, commander. The form *ductores* is masculine, nominative and plural. (We'll see the plural forms of the nominative case below.) *ibant* is in from the irregular verb *eō*, "to go." It is imperfect indicative active. Even in the irregular form, you can recognize that the ending is third person plural, so it agrees with the plural subject *ductores*.

4.13 Nouns in the nominative and genitive

Creating noun forms is similar to creating finite verb forms: (1) you find the stem from the dictionary entry, and (2) add the proper ending. For finite verbs, you had to choose the appropriate principal part of the verb to find its stem. For nouns, you use the genitive singular form (the second word in a dictionary entry), and drop the genitive ending.

4.13.1 TBA: add tables of ending, and worked examples from vocab list

4.14 Adjectives in the nominative and genitive

- introduce adjectives as part of speech
- introduce noun-adjective agreement
- introduce formation of adjectives, and forms of the nominative and genitive

4.15 Demonstrative pronouns in the nominative and genitive

- introduce demonstratives as example or pronouns (new part of speech)
- introduce pronominal use
- introduce formation of adjectives, and forms of the nominative and genitive
- introduce adjectival use

4.16 The personal agent of passive verbs

- introduce the **ablative** case
- forms in 3 declensions of nouns, in adjectives, and in the demonstrative

4.16.1 Means or instrument with active and passive verbs

- pure ablative

4.17 Direct and indirect objects

In addition to functioning as the **subject** of a verb, nouns can act as the **direct object** of the verb, or as the **indirect object** of the verb. In order for a verb to take an object, it must be a **transitive** verb, a verb that expresses an action that acts upon a recipient.

4.17.1 Direct object: function of the accusative case

The noun that receives the action of a verb in the active or middle voice is called the *direct object*. In Latin, the **accusative** case is the normal way to express this role in a clause: the accusative case is enough to show that the verb's action is done to it.

Hercules killed *the eagle* (that was torturing Prometheus).

The eagle is what is being killed, so in Latin it goes into the accusative case: *aquilam* Hercules interfecit

4.17.2 Indirect object: function of the dative case

Some verbs may express actions that also involve a secondary recipient, a person or thing that is affected by or benefits from the action: that noun is acting as the **indirect object**.

One verb that makes it easy to see the role of the indirect object, in both English and Latin, is the verb “to give.” (Latin grammarians in antiquity thought so, too: we have borrowed our term from the Latin *dativus casus*, “the case connected with giving.”) In English, we can express the indirect object either by word order or with a preposition such as “to.”

“Hercules gave him (Philoctetes) his divien arrows.” or “Hercules gave his divine arrows to him.”

In both sentences “arrows” is the direct object of the verb “gave”: the gifts are what is being directly affected by the action of the verb. The indirect object in both sentences is “him” (Philoctetes): as the recipient of the gifts, the action of giving affected Philoctetes in a secondary or indirect way. English expresses that by putting the indirect object before the direct object in the sentence, or with the preposition “to.”

Can you think of other verbs in English that frequently have both a direct and an indirect object expressed with this syntax?

In Latin, the indirect object is expressed with the dative case. Word order can be used for other kinds of emphasis.

Hercules suas sagittas diuinas *ei* donauit

4.18 Prepositions

4.19 Sentence Structures

Translating Latin sentences becomes much easier if you can recognize certain structural patterns that tell us what to expect in a sentence. Key to identifying what structural pattern a sentence follows is the **main verb**. The type of verb that appears in the sentence tells us what other grammatical items we need to fill out the rest of the sentence.

Below you will find a discussion of several very common sentence structures as well as guidelines for how to distinguish them by looking at the verb.

4.19.1 Intransitive Sentences

Intransitive sentences feature a subject and an **intransitive verb**. An intransitive verb is a verb that expresses an action or state of being, but does not act directly upon an object: for example, sneezing, dancing, running, raining, etc. As a result, an intransitive verb (and, thus, an intransitive sentence) does not take a direct object (on which, see Transitive Sentences below).

Below are some examples of intransitive sentences in Latin and English:

- Puella cucurrit. (“The girl ran.”)
- Timent. (“They are frightened.”)

NB: It might be tempting to think that a sentence like “The girl ran three miles” has a direct object. However, “three miles” is the shortened form of “for three miles”, an adverbial phrase that describes the word “ran.” We’ll learn more about phrases that express concepts of space and time in Module 3.

To summarize, intransitive sentences must have a:

- Subject
- Intransitive active verb

4.19.2 Transitive Sentences

Transitive sentences require a **direct object**, in addition to a subject and verb, to complete the meaning of the sentence.

For example, let’s consider the verb *facere* (“to make” in English). If I were to say *agricola fēcit* - “the farmer made”, the sentence would feel incomplete. You would be thinking, “What is he making? Pizza? Cake? A fence?”

Thus, we need to add a **direct object** to tell us what the farmer was making. In English, we would indicate this by putting what the farmer made immediately after the verb (e.g., “the farmer made pizza”). However, because Latin is an *inflected* language whose word order is highly variable, we can’t do this. Rather, Latin indicates that a noun is functioning as a direct object by putting it in the **accusative case**. Thus, the Latin version of the sentence looks like this:

Agricola *pizzam* fēcit.

Head to the noun paradigm charts and adjective paradigm charts to familiarize yourself with the **accusative** endings in the singular and plural of each declension and adjective grouping.

Below are some further examples of transitive sentences with accusative direct objects:

- Pater **filiam** amāvit (“The father loved his daughter.”)
- Fīlī **matrēs** amant. (“The sons love their mother.”)
- **Agricolam** uxor iuvābat. (“The wife was helping the farmer.”)
- Fortis vir **magnum monstrum et terribilem serpentem** pugnābat. (“The brave man is fighting the great monster and the terrible serpent.”)

Sometimes, you will want to specify the recipient of the action of the verb. For instance, in the sentence “the farmer gave the girl a pizza”, the girl receives the pizza that the farmer gives. Pizza is still the **direct object** - the farmer is giving the pizza (not the girl). In this sentence, the word “girl” is an **indirect object**, the recipient of

the action done by the main verb. In Latin, we signal the **indirect object** by using the **dative case**, which we usually translate as “to/for X”. So in Latin “the farmer gave the girl a pizza” looks like this:

- Agricola pizzam **puellae** dedit.

Literally, the sentence is “The farmer gave a pizza **to the girl**.”

Head to the noun paradigm charts and adjective paradigm charts to familiarize yourself with the **dative** endings in the singular and plural of each declension and adjective grouping.

To summarize, transitive sentences must have a:

- Subject
- Active verb
- Direct object in the accusative

And sometimes have an:

- Indirect object in the dative

4.19.3 Passive Sentences

Passive sentences feature a subject and, unsurprisingly, a **passive** verb. Because the subject of a passive verb is being acted upon, passive sentences do not feature a direct object. Below are some examples of simple passive sentences:

- Puella visa est. (“The girl was seen.”)
- Virī captī sunt. (“The men were captured.”)

Sometimes, passive sentences feature a construction known as the **ablative of agent** which tells us who performed the action of the main verb (since the subject is *receiving* the action of the verb, rather than performing it). We can recognize the **ablative of agent** by the preposition *ā/ab* followed by a noun in the **ablative case**. Below are the examples from above with an ablative of agent:

- Puella **ab matre** visa est. (“The girl was seen by her mother.”)
- Virī **ā fēminīs** captī sunt. (“The men were captured by the women.”)

Head to the noun paradigm charts and adjective paradigm charts to familiarize yourself with the **ablative** endings in the singular and plural of each declension and adjective grouping.

Passive sentences can also feature an **indirect object** in the **dative case** as well. For example, we might see a sentence like the following:

- Pizza **puellae** data est. (“The pizza was given to the girl.”)

To summarize, passive sentences must have a:

- Subject
- Passive verb

And sometimes have an:

- An ablative of agent
- Indirect object in the dative

4.19.4 Linking Sentences

Linking sentences, which we have already met, require a subject, **linking verb**, and **predicate nominative** which matches the subject in **number** and **case** and, in the case of adjectives as predicate nominatives, **gender**. The most common linking verb in English and Latin is “to be” (*sum, esse, fui, futurus*), though there are other linking verbs we will see throughout the semester. Below are some examples of linking sentences:

- Vir pater est. (“The man is a father.”)
- Puerī magnī et fortēs sunt. (“The boys are strong and brave.”)

In each of the sentences above, note which nominatives are the subjects (*vir, puerī*) and which nominatives are the predicate nominatives (*pater, magnī [et] fortēs*).

To summarize, linking sentences must have a:

- Subject
- Linking verb *-Predicate nominative

4.19.5 Tips for Determining Sentence Structure

The most important thing to do when determining sentence structure is to look at the **main verb**. If the verb is passive, we know that the sentence structure is going to be **passive**; if the verb is a linking verb (i.e. a form of *sum*), then we know the sentence structure is going to be **linking**. It is more difficult to differentiate between transitive and intransitive verbs. While some Latin verbs are used only transitively (verbs like “to carry”) and or only intransitively (verbs like “to rain”), a large number of verbs can be used both transitively or intransitively. In these cases, you will want to see if there is a direct object in the accusative case (transitive) or not (intransitive).

5 Richer sentences

In Unit 1, we learned how verbs and nouns conjugate and decline to create meaning and structure in Latin sentences. In Unit 2, we will continue to practice these skills in the context of more complicated syntax, with a particular focus on the different ways that Latin expresses time and place.

We will begin by learning about prepositional phrases and how they can add meaning to Latin verbal expressions. We will build directly on this by looking how Latin uses these and other constructions to express place and time

We will then move on to look at how we can convey different time relations through verbal tense. We will learn about the present and the future tense. After learning these tenses, we will have gained experience working with all four principal parts of a Latin verb!

5.1 Unit Objectives

By the end of this unit, you will be able to:

- Identify expressions of time using the accusative and ablative case
- Identify all persons of the present, future, imperfect, and perfect indicative in both active and passive voices
- Use principal parts to form present, future, imperfect and perfect forms of verbs
- Read more complex Latin sentences

6 Subordination

In Units 1 and 2, we learned how verbs and nouns conjugate and decline to create meaning and structure in Latin sentences, as well as how to express ideas like time and place using prepositional phrases. In Unit 3, we will build on this foundation and begin to read more complex sentences.

We will begin this unit with a consideration of subordination in Latin. We will learn about dependent clauses, focusing in particular on temporal clauses. In our discussion of dependent clauses, we will meet the subjunctive mood for the first time and learn how to form its imperfect and pluperfect tense. In doing so, we will begin to discuss what the subjunctive mood signifies in Latin, a conversation that we will continue for much of the next two semesters.

We will then move on to consider the place of the infinitive in Latin syntax. We will learn the present and perfect forms of the infinitive and discuss three usages of the infinitive: 1) as the subject of a Latin sentence; 2) as a word that complete the meaning of certain verbs; 3) as the main verb in an indirect statement (paraphrases but not quotations of what someone else has said).

6.1 Unit Objectives

By the end of this unit, you will be able to:

- Explain the difference between a dependent and independent clauses
- Identify temporal clauses
- Recognize and form the imperfect and pluperfect tenses of the subjunctive
- Recognize and form different tenses of *possum*
- Recognize and form different tense-voice combinations of the infinitive
- Identify different uses of the infinitive
- Recognize and formulate an indirect statement in Latin

7 Further subordination

In Unit 1 and 2, we learned how verbs and nouns conjugate and decline to create meaning and structure in Latin sentences, as well as how to express ideas like time and place using prepositional phrases and we built on this foundation and begin to read more complex sentences (cum clauses and indirect statements) in Unit 3. Unit 4 will introduce you to some new verbal forms that appear commonly in the Latin language.

We will start by learning the conjugation of several very common irregular verbs including *sum*, *possum*, *volo*, *nolo*, *eo*, and *fero*. This will not only help us to recognize these verbs when they show up in Latin texts, but also provide an opportunity to review the fundamentals of verb formation. We will also learn about deponent and semi-deponent verbs, a special class of verbs that are passive in form but active in meaning. In addition to learning these new forms, we will also learn two more tenses of the subjunctive, the present and perfect.

We will make use of these verbal forms as continue to practice translating complex sentences. We will continue to focus on translating indirect statements as well as temporal clauses with and without the subjunctive.

7.1 Unit Objectives

By the end of this unit, you will be able to:

Recognize and form a number of very common irregular verbs (*sum*, *possum*, *volo*, *nolo*, *eo*, and *fero*) Recognize and form deponent and semi-deponent verbs Recognize and form the present and perfect tenses of the subjunctive Recognize and translate temporal clauses Recognize and translate indirect statements

8 Some less frequent forms

We will begin unit 5 by going over the declension of nouns and adjectives from the first three declensions as well as the pronouns that we learned last semester. We will then move on to a full scale review of the Latin verbal forms that we met last semester. As we review these forms, we will also practice and review different grammatical structures that we saw last semester.

In addition to a review of old forms, we will meet some new ones to fill out our knowledge of Latin morphology. In terms of substantive forms, we will learn the fourth and fifth declension, two relatively obscure declensions that have some important members. We will also learn some verbal forms as well, including the first and second-person and the pluperfect indicative.

8.1 Objectives

By the end of Unit 5, you will be able to:

- Recognize and produce all substantive inflection patterns and analyze their grammatical function in sentences
- Recognize and produce (almost) all verbal inflection patterns and analyze their grammatical function in sentences
- Feel confident about the different grammatical structures that we met last semester

9 Relative clauses, participles, and gerunds

In Unit 1, we spent some time reviewing key concepts from last semester. In Unit 2, we will learn about different ways in which nouns, adjectives, and pronouns can be used to add further color to a Latin sentence.

We will begin by learning about relative clauses, a type of dependent clause that provides further information about a previous noun. We will then move on to learn about participles, a type of verbal adjective, that provides more information about the actions and behaviors of a noun within a sentence. We will conclude by looking at gerunds (verbal nouns) and gerundives (verbal adjectives) and the different constructions that they belong to.

Objectives

By the end of Unit 2, you will be able to:

Recognize relative clauses and analyze their grammatical function in sentences Recognize participles and understand how they add complexity to sentences Recognize gerunds and gerundives and identify the way that they are being used in sentences

10 Dependent clauses with the subjunctive

TBA

11 Reference

12 Regular Verbs - Paradigms

- TOC {;toc}

Paradigm Verbs:

- 1st Conjugation: *amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus* - to love
 - 2nd Conjugation: *moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus* - to warn, advise
 - 3rd Conjugation: *regō, regere, rexī, rectus* - to rule
 - 3rd -iō Conjugation: *capiō, capere, cēpī, captus* - to take, seize
 - 4th Conjugation: *audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus* - to hear
-

12.1 Indicative - Active

12.1.1 Present Active Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amō	moneō	regō	capiō	audiō
2nd sg.	amās	monēs	regis	capis	audīs
3rd sg.	amat	monet	regit	capit	audit
1st pl.	amāmus	monēmus	regimus	capimus	audīmus
2nd pl.	amātis	monētis	regitis	capitis	audītis
3rd pl.	amant	monent	regunt	capiunt	audiunt

12.1.2 Imperfect Active Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amābam	monēbam	regēbam	capiēbam	audiēbam
2nd sg.	amābās	monēbās	regēbās	capiēbās	audiēbās
3rd sg.	amābat	monēbat	regēbat	capiēbat	audiēbat
1st pl.	amābāmus	monēbāmus	regēbāmus	capiēbāmus	audiēbāmus
2nd pl.	amābātis	monēbātis	regēbātis	capiēbātis	audiēbātis
3rd pl.	amābant	monēbant	regēbant	capiēbant	audiēbant

12.1.3 Future Active Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amābō	monēbō	regam	capiam	audiam
2nd sg.	amābis	monēbis	regēs	capiēs	audiēs
3rd sg.	amābit	monēbit	reget	capiet	audiet
1st pl.	amābimus	monēbimus	regēmus	capiēmus	audiēmus
2nd pl.	amābitis	monēbitis	regētis	capiētis	audiētis
3rd pl.	amābunt	monēbunt	regent	capient	audient

12.1.4 Perfect Active Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amāvī	monuī	rexī	cēpī	audivī
2nd sg.	amāvistī	monuistī	rexisī	cēpistī	audivistī
3rd sg.	amāvit	monuit	rexit	cēpit	audivit
1st pl.	amāvimus	monuimus	reximus	cēpimus	audivimus
2nd pl.	amāvistis	monuistis	rexisitis	cēpistis	audivistis
3rd pl.	amāvērunt	monuērunt	rexērunt	cēpērunt	audivērunt

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
3rd pl. alt.	amāvēre	monuēre	rexēre	cēpēre	audivēre

12.1.5 Pluperfect Active Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amāveram	monueram	rexeram	cēperam	audiveram
2nd sg.	amāverās	monuerās	rexerās	cēperās	audiverās
3rd sg.	amāverat	monuerat	rexerat	cēperat	audiverat
1st pl.	amāverāmus	monuerāmus	rexerāmus	cēperāmus	audiverāmus
2nd pl.	amāverātis	monuerātis	rexerātis	cēperātis	audiverātis
3rd pl.	amāverant	monuerant	rexerant	cēperant	audiverant

12.1.6 Future Perfect Active Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amāverō	monuerō	rexerō	cēperō	audiverō
2nd sg.	amāveris	monueris	rexeris	cēperis	audiveris
3rd sg.	amāverit	monuerit	rexerit	cēperit	audiverit
1st pl.	amāverimus	monuerimus	rexerimus	cēperimus	audiverimus
2nd pl.	amāveritis	monueritis	rexeritis	cēperitis	audiveritis
3rd pl.	amāverint	monuerint	rexerint	cēperint	audiverint

12.2 Indicative - Passive

12.2.1 Present Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amor	moneor	regor	capior	audior
2nd sg.	amāris	monēris	regeris	caperis	audīris
3rd sg.	amātur	monētur	regitur	capitur	audītur
1st pl.	amāmur	monēmur	regimur	capimur	audīmur
2nd pl.	amāminī	monēminī	regiminī	capiminī	audīminī
3rd pl.	amantur	monentur	reguntur	capiuntur	audiuntur

12.2.2 Imperfect Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amābar	monēbar	regēbar	capiēbar	audiēbar
2nd sg.	amābāris	monēbāris	regēbāris	capiēbāris	audiēbāris
3rd sg.	amābātur	monēbātur	regēbātur	capiēbātur	audiēbātur
1st pl.	amābāmur	monēbāmur	regēbāmur	capiēbāmur	audiēbāmur
2nd pl.	amābāminī	monēbāminī	regēbāminī	capiēbāminī	audiēbāminī
3rd pl.	amābantur	monēbantur	regēbantur	capiēbantur	audiēbantur

12.2.3 Future Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amābor	monēbor	regar	capiar	audiar
2nd sg.	amāberis	monēberis	regēris	capiēris	audiēris
3rd sg.	amābitur	monēbitur	regētur	capiētur	audiētur
1st pl.	amābimur	monēbimur	regēmur	capiēmur	audiēmur
2nd pl.	amābiminī	monēbiminī	regēminī	capiēminī	audiēminī
3rd pl.	amābuntur	monēbuntur	regentur	capientur	audientur

12.2.4 Perfect Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amātus, -a, -um sum	monitus, -a, -um sum	rectus, -a, -um sum	captus, -a, -um sum	auditus, -a, -um sum
2nd sg.	amātus, -a, -um es	monitus, -a, -um es	rectus, -a, -um es	captus, -a, -um es	auditus, -a, -um es
3rd sg.	amātus, -a, -um est	monitus, -a, -um est	rectus, -a, -um est	captus, -a, -um est	auditus, -a, -um est
1st pl.	amātī, -ae, -a sumus	monitī, -ae, -a sumus	rectī, -ae, -a sumus	captī, -ae, -a sumus	audītī, -ae, -a sumus
2nd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a estis	monitī, -ae, -a estis	rectī, -ae, -a estis	captī, -ae, -a estis	audītī, -ae, -a estis
3rd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a sunt	monitī, -ae, -a sunt	rectī, -ae, -a sunt	captī, -ae, -a sunt	audītī, -ae, -a sunt

12.2.5 Pluperfect Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amātus, -a, -um eram	monitus, -a, -um eram	rectus, -a, -um eram	captus, -a, -um eram	auditus, -a, -um eram
2nd sg.	amātus, -a, -um erās	monitus, -a, -um erās	rectus, -a, -um erās	captus, -a, -um erās	auditus, -a, -um erās
3rd sg.	amātus, -a, -um erat	monitus, -a, -um erat	rectus, -a, -um erat	captus, -a, -um erat	auditus, -a, -um erat
1st pl.	amātī, -ae, -a erāmus	monitī, -ae, -a erāmus	rectī, -ae, -a erāmus	captī, -ae, -a erāmus	audītī, -ae, -a erāmus
2nd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a erātis	monitī, -ae, -a erātis	rectī, -ae, -a erātis	captī, -ae, -a erātis	audītī, -ae, -a erātis
3rd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a erant	monitī, -ae, -a erant	rectī, -ae, -a erant	captī, -ae, -a erant	audītī, -ae, -a erant

12.2.6 Future Perfect Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amātus, -a, -um erō	monitus, -a, -um erō	rectus, -a, -um erō	captus, -a, -um erō	auditus, -a, -um erō
2nd sg.	amātus, -a, -um eris	monitus, -a, -um eris	rectus, -a, -um eris	captus, -a, -um eris	auditus, -a, -um eris
3rd sg.	amātus, -a, -um erit	monitus, -a, -um erit	rectus, -a, -um erit	captus, -a, -um erit	auditus, -a, -um erit
1st pl.	amātī, -ae, -a erimus	monitī, -ae, -a erimus	rectī, -ae, -a erimus	captī, -ae, -a erimus	audītī, -ae, -a erimus
2nd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a eritis	monitī, -ae, -a eritis	rectī, -ae, -a eritis	captī, -ae, -a eritis	audītī, -ae, -a eritis
3rd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a erunt	monitī, -ae, -a erunt	rectī, -ae, -a erunt	captī, -ae, -a erunt	audītī, -ae, -a erunt

12.3 Subjunctive - Active

12.3.1 Present Active Subjunctive

Stem vowel changes are included in the bolded endings.

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	am em	mone am	reg am	capi am	audi am
2nd sg.	amē s	moneā s	regā s	capiā s	audiā s
3rd sg.	am et	moneat	regat	capiat	audiat
1st pl.	amē mus	moneā mus	regā mus	capiā mus	audiā mus
2nd pl.	amē tis	moneā tis	regā tis	capiā tis	audiā tis
3rd pl.	am ent	moneant	regant	capiant	audiant

12.3.2 Imperfect Active Subjunctive

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amārem	monērem	regerem	caperem	audīrem
2nd sg.	amārēs	monērēs	regerēs	caperēs	audīrēs
3rd sg.	amāret	monēret	regeret	caperet	audīret
1st pl.	amārēmus	monērēmus	regerēmus	caperēmus	audīrēmus
2nd pl.	amārētis	monērētis	regerētis	caperētis	audīrētis
3rd pl.	amārent	monērent	regerent	caperent	audīrent

12.3.3 Perfect Active Subjunctive

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amāverim	monuerim	rexerim	cēperim	audīverim
2nd sg.	amāverīs	monuerīs	rexerīs	cēperīs	audīverīs
3rd sg.	amāverit	monuerit	rexerit	cēperit	audīverit
1st pl.	amāverīmus	monuerīmus	rexerīmus	cēperīmus	audīverīmus
2nd pl.	amāverītis	monuerītis	rexerītis	cēperītis	audīverītis
3rd pl.	amāverint	monuerint	rexerint	cēperint	audīverint

12.3.4 Pluperfect Active Subjunctive

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amāvissem	monuisssem	rexissem	cēpisssem	audīvissem
2nd sg.	amāvissēs	monuissēs	rexissēs	cēpissēs	audīvissēs
3rd sg.	amāvisset	monuisset	rexisset	cēpisset	audīvisset
1st pl.	amāvissēmus	monuissēmus	rexissēmus	cēpissēmus	audīvissēmus
2nd pl.	amāvissētis	monuissētis	rexissētis	cēpissētis	audīvissētis

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
3rd pl.	amāvissent	monuissent	rexissent	cēpissent	audīvissent

12.4 Subjunctive - Passive

12.4.1 Present Passive Subjunctive

Stem vowel changes are included in the bolded endings.

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amer	monear	regar	capiar	audiar
2nd sg.	amēris	moneāris	regāris	capiāris	audiāris
3rd sg.	amētur	moneātur	regātur	capiātur	audiātur
1st pl.	amēmur	moneāmur	regāmur	capiāmur	audiāmur
2nd pl.	amēmini	moneāmini	regāmini	capiāmini	audiāmini
3rd pl.	amentur	moneantur	regantur	capiantur	audiantur

12.4.2 Imperfect Passive Subjunctive

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amārer	monērer	regerer	caperer	audīrer
2nd sg.	amārēris	monērē*ris**	regerēris	caperēris	audīrēris
3rd sg.	amārētur	monērētur	regerētur	caperētur	audīrētur
1st pl.	amārēmur	monērēmur	regerēmur	caperēmur	audīrēmur
2nd pl.	amārēmini	monērēmini	regerēmini	caperēmini	audīrēmini
3rd pl.	amārentur	monērentur	regerentur	caperentur	audīrentur

12.4.3 Perfect Passive Subjunctive

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amātus, -a, -um sim	monitus, -a, -um sim	rectus, -a, -um sim	captus, -a, -um sim	auditus, -a, -um sim
2nd sg.	amātus, -a, -um sīs	monitus, -a, -um sīs	rectus, -a, -um sīs	captus, -a, -um sīs	auditus, -a, -um sīs
3rd sg.	amātus, -a, -um sit	monitus, -a, -um sit	rectus, -a, -um sit	captus, -a, -um sit	auditus, -a, -um sit
1st pl.	amātī, -ae, -a sīmus	monitī, -ae, -a sīmus	rectī, -ae, -a sīmus	captī, -ae, -a sīmus	audītī, -ae, -a sīmus
2nd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a sītis	monitī, -ae, -a sītis	rectī, -ae, -a sītis	captī, -ae, -a sītis	audītī, -ae, -a sītis
3rd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a sint	monitī, -ae, -a sint	rectī, -ae, -a sint	captī, -ae, -a sint	audītī, -ae, -a sint

12.4.4 Pluperfect Passive Subjunctive

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amātus, -a, -um essem	monitus, -a, -um essem	rectus, -a, -um essem	captus, -a, -um essem	auditus, -a, -um essem
2nd sg.	amātus, -a, -um essēs	monitus, -a, -um essēs	rectus, -a, -um essēs	captus, -a, -um essēs	auditus, -a, -um essēs
3rd sg.	amātus, -a, -um esset	monitus, -a, -um esset	rectus, -a, -um esset	captus, -a, -um esset	auditus, -a, -um esset
1st pl.	amātī, -ae, -a essēmus	monitī, -ae, -a essēmus	rectī, -ae, -a essēmus	captī, -ae, -a essēmus	audītī, -ae, -a essēmus
2nd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a essētis	monitī, -ae, -a essētis	rectī, -ae, -a essētis	captī, -ae, -a essētis	audītī, -ae, -a essētis
3rd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a essent	monitī, -ae, -a essent	rectī, -ae, -a essent	captī, -ae, -a essent	audītī, -ae, -a essent

12.5 Infinitives

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
Pres. Act.	amāre	monēre	regere	capere	audire
Pres. Pass.	amārī	monērī	regī	capī	audīrī
Perf. Act.	amāvisse	monuisse	rexisse	cēpisse	audīvisse
Perf. Pass.	amātus esse	monitus esse	rectus esse	captus esse	audītus esse
Fut. Act.	amātūrus esse	monitūrus esse	rectūrus esse	captūrus esse	audītūrus esse
Fut. Pass.	amātum irī	monitum irī	rectum irī	captum irī	audītum irī

12.6 Gerunds and Gerundives

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
Gerund	amandum	monendum	regendum	capiendum	audiendum
Gerundive	amandus, -a, -um	monendus, -a, -um	regendus, -a, -um	capiendus, -a, -um	audiendus, -a, -um

13 Deponent Verbs - Paradigms

- TOC {;toc}

Paradigm Verbs:

- 1st Conjugation: *hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum* - to exhort, encourage
 - 2nd Conjugation: *vereor, verērī, veritus sum* - to fear
 - 3rd Conjugation: *loquor, loquī, locutus sum* - to speak
 - 3rd -iō Conjugation: *morior, morī, mortuus sum* - to die
 - 4th Conjugation: *potior, potīrī, potītus sum* - to gain possession of
-

13.1 Indicative - Passive (Deponent)

13.1.1 Present Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	hortor	vereor	loquor	morior	potior
2nd sg.	hortāris	verēris	loqueris	moreris	potīris
3rd sg.	hortātur	verētur	loquitur	moritur	potītur
1st pl.	hortāmur	verēmur	loquimur	morimur	potīmur
2nd pl.	hortāminī	verēminī	loquiminī	moriminī	potīminī
3rd pl.	hortantur	verentur	loquuntur	moriuntur	potiuntur

13.1.2 Imperfect Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	hortābar	verēbar	loquēbar	moriēbar	potiēbar
2nd sg.	hortābāris	verēbāris	loquēbāris	moriēbāris	potiēbāris
3rd sg.	hortābātur	verēbātur	loquēbātur	moriēbātur	potiēbātur
1st pl.	hortābāmur	verēbāmur	loquēbāmur	moriēbāmur	potiēbāmur
2nd pl.	hortābāminī	verēbāminī	loquēbāminī	moriēbāminī	potiēbāminī
3rd pl.	hortābantur	verēbantur	loquēbantur	moriēbantur	potiēbantur

13.1.3 Future Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	hortābor	verēbor	loquar	moriar	potiar
2nd sg.	hortāberis	verēberis	loquēris	moriēris	potiēris
3rd sg.	hortābitur	verēbitur	loquētur	moriētur	potiētur
1st pl.	hortābimur	verēbimur	loquēmur	moriēmur	potiēmur
2nd pl.	hortābiminī	verēbiminī	loquēminī	moriēminī	potiēminī
3rd pl.	hortābuntur	verēbuntur	loquentur	morientur	potientur

13.1.4 Perfect Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	hortātus, -a, -um sum	veritus, -a, -um sum	locutus, -a, -um sum	mortuus, -a, -um sum	potītus, -a, -um sum
2nd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um es	veritus, -a, -um es	locutus, -a, -um es	mortuus, -a, -um es	potītus, -a, -um es
3rd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um est	veritus, -a, -um est	locutus, -a, -um est	mortuus, -a, -um est	potītus, -a, -um est

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a sumus	veritī, -ae, -a sumus	locutī, -ae, -a sumus	mortuī, -ae, -a sumus	potītī, -ae, -a sumus
2nd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a estis	veritī, -ae, -a estis	locutī, -ae, -a estis	mortuī, -ae, -a estis	potītī, -ae, -a estis
3rd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a sunt	veritī, -ae, -a sunt	locutī, -ae, -a sunt	mortuī, -ae, -a sunt	potītī, -ae, -a sunt

13.1.5 Pluperfect Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	hortātus, -a, -um eram	veritus, -a, -um eram	locutus, -a, -um eram	mortuus, -a, -um eram	potītus, -a, -um eram
2nd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um erās	veritus, -a, -um erās	locutus, -a, -um erās	mortuus, -a, -um erās	potītus, -a, -um erās
3rd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um erat	veritus, -a, -um erat	locutus, -a, -um erat	mortuus, -a, -um erat	potītus, -a, -um erat
1st pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a erāmus	veritī, -ae, -a erāmus	locutī, -ae, -a erāmus	mortuī, -ae, -a erāmus	potītī, -ae, -a erāmus
2nd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a erātis	veritī, -ae, -a erātis	locutī, -ae, -a erātis	mortuī, -ae, -a erātis	potītī, -ae, -a erātis
3rd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a erant	veritī, -ae, -a erant	locutī, -ae, -a erant	mortuī, -ae, -a erant	potītī, -ae, -a erant

13.1.6 Future Perfect Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	hortātus, -a, -um erō	veritus, -a, -um erō	locutus, -a, -um erō	mortuus, -a, -um erō	potītus, -a, -um erō
2nd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um eris	veritus, -a, -um eris	locutus, -a, -um eris	mortuus, -a, -um eris	potītus, -a, -um eris

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
3rd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um erit	veritus, -a, -um erit	locutus, -a, -um erit	mortuus, -a, -um erit	potītus, -a, -um erit
1st pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a erimus	veritī, -ae, -a erimus	locutī, -ae, -a erimus	mortuī, -ae, -a erimus	potītī, -ae, -a erimus
2nd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a eritis	veritī, -ae, -a eritis	locutī, -ae, -a eritis	mortuī, -ae, -a eritis	potītī, -ae, -a eritis
3rd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a erunt	veritī, -ae, -a erunt	locutī, -ae, -a erunt	mortuī, -ae, -a erunt	potītī, -ae, -a erunt

13.2 Subjunctive - Passive (Deponent)

13.2.1 Present Passive Subjunctive

Stem vowel changes are included in the bolded endings.

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	horter	verear	loquar	moriar	potiar
2nd sg.	hortēris	vereāris	loquāris	moriāris	potiāris
3rd sg.	hortētur	vereātur	loquātur	moriātur	potiātur
1st pl.	hortēmur	vereāmur	loquāmur	moriāmur	potiāmur
2nd pl.	hortēminī	vereāminī	loquāminī	moriāminī	potiāminī
3rd pl.	hortentur	vereantur	loquantur	morianur	potiantur

13.2.2 Imperfect Passive Subjunctive

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	hortārer	verērer	loquerer	morerer	potīrer

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
2nd sg.	hortārēris	verērēris	loquerēris	morerēris	potirēris
3rd sg.	hortārētur	verērētur	loquerētur	morerētur	potirētur
1st pl.	hortārēmur	verērēmur	loquerēmur	morerēmur	potirēmur
2nd pl.	hortārēmini	verērēmini	loquerēmini	morerēmini	potirēmini
3rd pl.	hortārentur	verērentur	loquerentur	morerentur	potirentur

13.2.3 Perfect Passive Subjunctive

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	hortātus, -a, -um sim	veritus, -a, -um sim	locutus, -a, -um sim	mortuus, -a, -um sim	potītus, -a, -um sim
2nd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um sis	veritus, -a, -um sis	locutus, -a, -um sis	mortuus, -a, -um sis	potītus, -a, -um sis
3rd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um sit	veritus, -a, -um sit	locutus, -a, -um sit	mortuus, -a, -um sit	potītus, -a, -um sit
1st pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a sīmus	veritī, -ae, -a sīmus	locutī, -ae, -a sīmus	mortuī, -ae, -a sīmus	potītī, -ae, -a sīmus
2nd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a sītis	veritī, -ae, -a sītis	locutī, -ae, -a sītis	mortuī, -ae, -a sītis	potītī, -ae, -a sītis
3rd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a sint	veritī, -ae, -a sint	locutī, -ae, -a sint	mortuī, -ae, -a sint	potītī, -ae, -a sint

13.2.4 Pluperfect Passive Subjunctive

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	hortātus, -a, -um essem	veritus, -a, -um essem	locutus, -a, -um essem	mortuus, -a, -um essem	potītus, -a, -um essem
2nd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um essēs	veritus, -a, -um essēs	locutus, -a, -um essēs	mortuus, -a, -um essēs	potītus, -a, -um essēs

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
3rd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um esset	veritus, -a, -um esset	locutus, -a, -um esset	mortuus, -a, -um esset	potītus, -a, -um esset
1st pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a essēmus	veritī, -ae, -a essēmus	locutī, -ae, -a essēmus	mortuī, -ae, -a essēmus	potītī, -ae, -a essēmus
2nd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a essētis	veritī, -ae, -a essētis	locutī, -ae, -a essētis	mortuī, -ae, -a essētis	potītī, -ae, -a essētis
3rd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a essent	veritī, -ae, -a essent	locutī, -ae, -a essent	mortuī, -ae, -a essent	potītī, -ae, -a essent

13.3 Infinitives

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
Pres. Pass.	hortārī	verērī	loquī	morī	potīrī
Perf. Pass.	hortātus esse	veritus esse	locutus esse	mortuus esse	potītus esse
Fut. Act.	hortātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	locutūrus esse	mortuūrus esse	potītūrus esse

13.4 Gerunds and Gerundives

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
Gerund	hortandum	verendum	loquendum	moriendum	potiendum
Gerundive	hortandus, -a, -um	verendus, -a, -um	loquendus, -a, -um	moriendus, -a, -um	potiendus, -a, -um

14 Nouns - Paradigms

· TOC {;toc}

14.1 First Declension

14.1.1 *puella, puellae*, f. - girl

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	puella	puellae
Genitive	puellae	puellārum
Dative	puellae	puellis
Accusative	puellam	puellās
Ablative	puellā	puellis

14.2 Second Declension Masculine

14.2.1 *maritus, maritī*, m. - husband

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	maritus	maritī
Genitive	maritī	maritōrum

Case	Singular	Plural
Dative	maritō	maritīs
Accusative	maritum	maritōs
Ablative	maritō	maritīs

14.2.2 *ager, agrī*, m. - field

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	ager	agrī
Genitive	agrī	agrōrum
Dative	agrō	agrīs
Accusative	agrum	agrōs
Ablative	agrō	agrīs

14.3 Second Declension Neuter

14.3.1 *exemplum, exemplī*, n. - example

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	exemplum	exempla
Genitive	exemplī	exemplōrum
Dative	exemplō	exemplīs
Accusative	exemplum	exempla
Ablative	exemplō	exemplīs

14.4 Third Declension Masculine/Feminine

14.4.1 *mater, matris*, f. - mother

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	<i>māter</i> *	<i>mātrēs</i>
Genitive	<i>mātris</i>	<i>mātrum</i>
Dative	<i>mātrī</i>	<i>mātribus</i>
Accusative	<i>mātre</i> m	<i>mātrēs</i>
Ablative	<i>mātre</i>	<i>mātribus</i>

* Nominative forms of third declension nouns are highly variable; there is no one set or common ending.

14.5 Third Declension Masculine/Feminine i-stem

14.5.1 *urbs, urbis*, f. - city

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	<i>urbs</i> *	<i>urbēs</i>
Genitive	<i>urbis</i>	<i>urbium</i> **
Dative	<i>urbī</i>	<i>urbibus</i>
Accusative	<i>urbem</i>	<i>urbēs</i>
Ablative	<i>urbe</i>	<i>urbibus</i>

* Nominative forms of third declension nouns are highly variable; there is no one set or common ending. ** Note the extra i in the genitive plural ending: *-ium*, rather than simply *-um*.

14.6 Third Declension Neuter

14.6.1 *nōmen, nōminis*, n. - name

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	nōmen*	nōmina
Genitive	nōminis	nōminum
Dative	nōminī	nōminibus
Accusative	nōmen**	nōmina**
Ablative	nōmine	nōminibus

* Nominative forms of third declension nouns are highly variable; there is no one set or common ending. ** The accusative forms of all **neuter** nouns, adjectives, and pronouns exactly match their nominative counterparts within the same number (e.g., neuter accusative singular = neuter nominative singular).

14.7 Third Declension Neuter i-stem

14.7.1 *mare, maris*, n. - sea

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	mare*	maria***
Genitive	maris	marium***
Dative	marī	maribus
Accusative	mare**	maria***
Ablative	marī***	maribus

* Nominative forms of third declension nouns are highly variable; there is no one set or common ending. ** The accusative forms of all **neuter** nouns, adjectives, and pronouns exactly match their nominative counterparts within the same number (e.g., neuter accusative singular = neuter nominative singular). *** Note the replacement of the normal ablative singular ending -e with -ī and the extra i in the endings of the nominative, genitive, and accusative plurals.

14.8 Fourth Declension Masculine/Feminine

14.8.1 *manus, manūs*, f. - hand

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	<i>manus</i>	<i>manūs</i>
Genitive	<i>manūs</i>	<i>manuum</i>
Dative	<i>manū</i>	<i>manibus</i>
Accusative	<i>manum</i>	<i>manūs</i>
Ablative	<i>manū</i>	<i>manibus</i>

14.9 Fourth Declension Neuter

14.9.1 *genū, genūs*, n. - knee

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	<i>genū</i>	<i>genua</i>
Genitive	<i>genūs</i>	<i>genuum</i>
Dative	<i>genū</i>	<i>genibus</i>
Accusative	<i>genū</i>	<i>genua</i>
Ablative	<i>genū</i>	<i>genibus</i>

14.10 Fifth Declension Masculine/Feminine

14.10.1 *rēs, reī*, f. - thing, matter, situation, affair

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	<i>rēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>
Genitive	<i>reī</i>	<i>rērum</i>
Dative	<i>reī</i>	<i>rēbus</i>
Accusative	<i>rem</i>	<i>rēs</i>
Ablative	<i>rē</i>	<i>rēbus</i>

14.10.2 *diēs, diēī*, m. - day

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	<i>diēs</i>	<i>diēs</i>
Genitive	<i>diēī</i>	<i>diērum</i>
Dative	<i>diēī</i>	<i>diēbus</i>
Accusative	<i>diem</i>	<i>diēs</i>
Ablative	<i>diē</i>	<i>diēbus</i>

15 Adjectives - Paradigms

· TOC {;toc}

15.1 2-1-2 adjectives

15.1.1 *bonus, bona, bonum* - good

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	bonus	bona	bonum
Genitive	bonī	bonae	bonī
Dative	bonō	bonae	bonō
Accusative	bonum	bonam	bonum
Ablative	bonō	bonā	bonō

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	bonī	bonae	bona
Genitive	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
Dative	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Accusative	bonōs	bonās	bona
Ablative	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

15.1.2 *pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum* - beautiful, handsome

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
Genitive	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī
Dative	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
Accusative	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum
Ablative	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
Genitive	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
Dative	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs
Accusative	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
Ablative	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs

15.2 2-1-2 - īus adjectives

15.2.1 *nullus, nulla, nullum* - no, none

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	nullus*	nulla	nullum**
Genitive	nullīus	nullīus	nullīus
Dative	nullī	nullī	nullī

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Accusative	nullum	nullam	nullum
Ablative	nullō	nullā	nullō

* Some masculine nominative singulars of -īus adjectives end in -r (e.g., *alter*, *altera*, *alterum*). ** Some neuter nominative singulars of -īus adjectives end in -d (e.g., *alius*, *alia*, *aliud*).

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	nullī	nullae	nulla
Genitive	nullōrum	nullārum	nullōrum
Dative	nullīs	nullīs	nullīs
Accusative	nullōs	nullās	nulla
Ablative	nullīs	nullīs	nullīs

15.3 Three-Termination Adjectives

15.3.1 *ācer*, *ācris*, *ācre* - keen, sharp

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	ācer	ācris	ācre
Genitive	ācris	ācris	ācris
Dative	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
Accusative	ācre m	ācre m	ācre
Ablative	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Genitive	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
Dative	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Accusative	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Ablative	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

15.4 Two-Termination Adjectives**15.4.1 *fortis, forte* - strong, brave****Singular**

Case	M./F.	Neuter
Nominative	fortis	forte
Genitive	fortis	fortis
Dative	fortī	fortī
Accusative	fortem	forte
Ablative	fortī	fortī

Plural

Case	M./F.	Neuter
Nominative	fortēs	fortia
Genitive	fortium	fortium
Dative	fortibus	fortibus
Accusative	fortēs	fortia

Case	M./F.	Neuter
Ablative	fortibus	fortibus

15.5 One-Termination Adjectives

15.5.1 *sapiēns, sapientis* - wise

Singular

Case	M./F.	Neuter
Nominative	sapiēns	sapiēns
Genitive	sapientis	sapientis
Dative	sapientī	sapientī
Accusative	sapientem	sapiēns*
Ablative	sapientī	sapientī

* The accusative forms of all **neuter** nouns, adjectives, and pronouns exactly match their nominative counterparts within the same number (e.g., neuter accusative singular = neuter nominative singular).

Plural

Case	M./F.	Neuter
Nominative	sapientēs	sapientia
Genitive	sapientium	sapientium
Dative	sapientibus	sapientibus
Accusative	sapientēs	sapientia
Ablative	sapientibus	sapientibus

15.6 Interrogative

15.6.1 *quī, quae, quod* - which? what?

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	quī	quae	quod
Genitive	cuius	cuius	cuius
Dative	cui	cui	cui
Accusative	quem	quam	quod
Ablative	quō	quā	quō

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	quī	quae	quae
Genitive	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dative	quibus	quibus	quibus
Accusative	quōs	quās	quae
Ablative	quibus	quibus	quibus

15.7 Declinable Numerals

15.7.1 *ūnus, -a, -um* - one

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	ūnus	ūna	ūnum
Genitive	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Dative	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī
Accusative	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum
Ablative	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō

15.7.2 *duo, duae, duo* - two

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	duo	duae	duo
Genitive	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
Dative	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
Accusative	duōs	duās	duo
Ablative	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

15.7.3 *trēs, tria* - three

Case	M./F.	Neuter
Nominative	trēs	tria
Genitive	trium	trium
Dative	tribus	tribus
Accusative	trēs	tria
Ablative	tribus	tribus

16 Irregular Verbs - Paradigms

- TOC {;toc}

Paradigm Verbs:

- sum, esse, fuī, futūrus - to be
 - eō, īre, īvī/īi, ītus - to go
 - ferō, ferre, tūlī, lātus - to bear, carry
 - volō, velle, voluī - to want, wish
 - nōlō, nolle, nolūi - not to want
 - mālō, malle, maluī - to prefer
-

16.1 Indicative - Active

16.1.1 Present Active Indicative

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
2nd sg.	es	īs	fers	vīs	nōn vīs	māvis
3rd sg.	est	it	fert	vult	nōn vult	māvult
1st pl.	sumus	īmus	ferimus	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
2nd pl.	estis	ītis	fertis	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
3rd pl.	sunt	eunt	ferunt	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt

16.1.2 Imperfect Active Indicative

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	eram	ībam	ferēbam	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
2nd sg.	erās	ībās	ferēbās	volēbās	nōlēbās	mālēbās
3rd sg.	erat	ībat	ferēbat	volēbat	nōlēbat	mālēbat
1st pl.	erāmus	ībāmus	ferēbāmus	volēbāmus	nōlēbāmus	mālēbāmus
2nd pl.	erātis	ībātis	ferēbātis	volēbātis	nōlēbātis	mālēbātis
3rd pl.	erant	ībant	ferēbant	volēbant	nōlēbant	mālēbant

16.1.3 Future Active Indicative

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	erō	ībō	feram	volam	nōlam	mālam
2nd sg.	eris	ībīs	ferēs	volēs	nōlēs	mālēs
3rd sg.	erit	ībit	feret	volet	nōlet	mālet
1st pl.	erimus	ībimus	ferēmus	volēmus	nōlēmus	mālēmus
2nd pl.	eritis	ībītis	ferētis	volētis	nōlētis	mālētis
3rd pl.	erunt	ībunt	ferent	volent	nōlent	mālent

16.1.4 Perfect Active Indicative

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	fuī	īvī or iī	tulī	voluī	nōluī	māluī
2nd sg.	fuistī	īstī	tulistī	voluistī	nōluistī	māluistī
3rd sg.	fuit	iit	tulit	voluit	nōluit	māluit
1st pl.	fuimus	iimus	tulimus	voluimus	nōluimus	māluimus
2nd pl.	fuistis	īstis	tulistis	voluistis	nōluistis	māluistis
3rd pl.	fuērunt	iērunt	tulērunt	voluērunt	nōluērunt	māluērunt

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
3rd pl. alt.	fuēre	īere	tulēre	voluēre	nōluēre	māluēre

16.1.5 Pluperfect Active Indicative

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	fueram	ieram	tuleram	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
2nd sg.	fuerās	ierās	tulerās	voluerās	nōluerās	māluerās
3rd sg.	fuerat	ierat	tulerat	voluerat	nōluerat	māluerat
1st pl.	fuerāmus	ierāmus	tulerāmus	voluerāmus	nōluerāmus	māluerāmus
2nd pl.	fuerātis	ierātis	tulerātis	voluerātis	nōluerātis	māluerātis
3rd pl.	fuerant	ierant	tulerant	voluerant	nōluerant	māluerant

16.1.6 Future Perfect Active Indicative

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	fuerō	ierō	tulerō	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō
2nd sg.	fueris	ieris	tuleris	volueris	nōlueris	mālueris
3rd sg.	fuerit	ierit	tulerit	voluerit	nōluerit	māluerit
1st pl.	fuerimus	ierimus	tulerimus	voluerimus	nōluerimus	māluerimus
2nd pl.	fueritis	ieritis	tuleritis	volueritis	nōlueritis	mālueritis
3rd pl.	fuerint	ierint	tulerint	voluerint	nōluerint	māluerint

16.2 Indicative - Passive (ferō)

16.2.1 Present Passive Indicative

	Singular	Plural
1st	feror	ferimur
2nd	ferris	ferimini
3rd	fertur	feruntur

16.2.2 Imperfect Passive Indicative

	Singular	Plural
1st	ferēbar	ferēbāmur
2nd	ferēbāris	ferēbāmini
3rd	ferēbātur	ferēbantur

16.2.3 Future Passive Indicative

	Singular	Plural
1st	ferar	ferēmur
2nd	ferēris	ferēmini
3rd	ferētur	ferentur

16.2.4 Perfect Passive Indicative

	Singular	Plural
1st	lātus, -a, -um sum	lātī, -ae, -a sumus
2nd	lātus, -a, -um es	lātī, -ae, -a estis
3rd	lātus, -a, -um est	lātī, -ae, -a sunt

16.2.5 Pluperfect Passive Indicative

	Singular	Plural
1st	lātus, -a, -um eram	lātī, -ae, -a erāmus
2nd	lātus, -a, -um erās	lātī, -ae, -a erātis
3rd	lātus, -a, -um erat	lātī, -ae, -a erant

16.2.6 Future Perfect Passive Indicative

	Singular	Plural
1st	lātus, -a, -um erō	lātī, -ae, -a erimus
2nd	lātus, -a, -um eris	lātī, -ae, -a eritis
3rd	lātus, -a, -um erit	lātī, -ae, -a erunt

16.3 Subjunctive - Active

16.3.1 Present Active Subjunctive

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	sim	eam	feram	velim	nōlim	mālim
2nd sg.	sīs	eās	ferās	velis	nōlis	mālis
3rd sg.	sit	eat	ferat	velit	nōlit	mālit
1st pl.	sīmus	eāmus	ferāmus	velīmus	nōlīmus	mālīmus
2nd pl.	sītis	eātis	ferātis	velītis	nōlītis	mālītis
3rd pl.	sint	eant	ferant	velint	nōlint	mālint

16.3.2 Imperfect Active Subjunctive

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	essem	īrem	ferrem	vellem	nōllem	māllem
2nd sg.	essēs	īrēs	ferrēs	vellēs	nōllēs	māllēs
3rd sg.	esset	īret	ferret	vellet	nōllet	māllet
1st pl.	essēmus	īrēmus	ferrēmus	vellēmus	nōllēmus	māllēmus
2nd pl.	essētis	īrētis	ferrētis	vellētis	nōllētis	māllētis
3rd pl.	essent	īrent	ferrent	vellent	nōllent	māllent

16.3.3 Perfect Active Subjunctive

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	fuerim	ierim	tulerim	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
2nd sg.	fuerīs	ierīs	tulerīs	voluerīs	nōluerīs	māluerīs
3rd sg.	fuerit	ierit	tulerit	voluerit	nōluerit	māluerit
1st pl.	fuerīmus	ierīmus	tulerīmus	voluerīmus	nōluerīmus	māluerīmus
2nd pl.	fuerītis	ierītis	tulerītis	voluerītis	nōluerītis	māluerītis
3rd pl.	fuerint	ierint	tulerint	voluerint	nōluerint	māluerint

16.3.4 Pluperfect Active Subjunctive

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	fuissem	īsssem	tulissem	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem
2nd sg.	fuissēs	īssēs	tulissēs	voluissēs	nōluissēs	māluissēs
3rd sg.	fuisset	īssset	tulisset	voluisset	nōluisset	māluisset
1st pl.	fuissēmus	īssēmus	tulissēmus	voluissēmus	nōluissēmus	māluissēmus
2nd pl.	fuissētis	īssētis	tulissētis	voluissētis	nōluissētis	māluissētis
3rd pl.	fuissent	īssent	tulissent	voluissent	nōluissent	māluissent

16.4 Subjunctive - Passive (ferō)

16.4.1 Present Passive Subjunctive

	Singular	Plural
1st	ferar	ferāmur
2nd	ferāris	ferāminī
3rd	ferātur	ferantur

16.4.2 Imperfect Passive Subjunctive

	Singular	Plural
1st	ferrer	ferrēmur
2nd	ferrēris	ferrēminī
3rd	ferrētur	ferrentur

16.4.3 Perfect Passive Subjunctive

	Singular	Plural
1st	lātus, -a, -um sim	lātī, -ae, -a sīmus
2nd	lātus, -a, -um sīs	lātī, -ae, -a sītis
3rd	lātus, -a, -um sit	lātī, -ae, -a sint

16.4.4 Pluperfect Passive Subjunctive

	Singular	Plural
1st	lātus, -a, -um essem	lātī, -ae, -a essēmus
2nd	lātus, -a, -um essēs	lātī, -ae, -a essētis
3rd	lātus, -a, -um esset	lātī, -ae, -a essent

16.5 Infinitives

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō
Pres. Act.	esse	īre	ferre	velle	nolle
Pres. Pass.			ferī		
Perf. Act.	fuisse	īsse	tulisse	voluisse	nōluisse
Perf. Pass.			lātus esse		
Fut. Act.	futūrus esse / fōre	itūrus esse	lātūrus esse		
Fut. Pass.			lātum īrī		

16.6 Gerunds and Gerundives

	eō	ferō
Gerund	eundum	ferendum
Gerundive	eundus, -a, -um	ferendus, -a, -um

17 Pronouns - Paradigms

· TOC {;toc}

17.1 Demonstratives

Note that demonstrative pronouns can also modify nouns and thus serve as demonstrative *adjectives*.

17.1.1 *hic, haec, hoc* - this, these

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	hic	haec	hoc
Genitive	huius	huius	huius
Dative	huic	huic	huic
Accusative	hunc	hanc	hoc
Ablative	hōc	hāc	hōc

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	hī	hae	haec
Genitive	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dative	hīs	hīs	hīs
Accusative	hōs	hās	haec

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Ablative	hīs	hīs	hīs

17.1.2 *ille, illa, illud* - that, those

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	ille	illa	illud
Genitive	illīus	illīus	illīus
Dative	illī	illī	illī
Accusative	illum	illam	illud
Ablative	illō	illā	illō

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	illī	illae	illa
Genitive	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dative	illīs	illīs	illīs
Accusative	illōs	illās	illa
Ablative	illīs	illīs	illīs

17.2 Intensives

Note that intensive pronouns can also modify nouns and thus serve as intensive *adjectives*.

17.2.1 *ipse, ipsa, ipsum* - the very ____, ____ self

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	ipse	ipsa	ipsum
Genitive	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius
Dative	ipsi	ipsi	ipsi
Accusative	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
Ablative	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	ipsi	ipsae	ipsa
Genitive	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dative	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
Accusative	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Ablative	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis

17.3 Personal

17.3.1 *is, ea, id* - he, she, it, they (3rd person)

Note that the 3rd person personal pronoun can also modify nouns and thus serve as a demonstrative *adjective*; this demonstrative has a more general force and doesn't indicate distance from the speaker in the way that *hic* or *ille* do.

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	is	ea	id
Genitive	eius	eius	eius
Dative	eī	eī	eī
Accusative	eum	eam	id
Ablative	eō	eā	eō

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	eī / iī	eae	ea
Genitive	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dative	eīs	eīs	eīs
Accusative	eōs	eās	ea
Ablative	eīs	eīs	eīs

17.3.2 *ego* - I, me, we, us (1st person)

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	ego	nōs
Genitive	meī	nostrum / nostrī
Dative	mihi	nōbīs
Accusative	mē	nōs
Ablative	mē	nōbīs

17.3.3 *tū* - you, you all (2nd person)

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	tū	vōs
Genitive	tuī	vestrum / vestrī
Dative	tibi	vōbīs
Accusative	tē	vōs
Ablative	tē	vōbīs

17.4 Reflexive

17.4.1 1st person (myself, ourselves)

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	—	—
Genitive	meī	nostrum / nostrī
Dative	mihi	nōbīs
Accusative	mē	nōs
Ablative	mē	nōbīs

17.4.2 2nd person (yourself, yourselves)

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	—	—
Genitive	tuī	vestrum / vestrī
Dative	tibi	vōbīs
Accusative	tē	vōs
Ablative	tē	vōbīs

17.4.3 3rd person (himself, herself, itself, themselves)

Case	Sing./Pl.
Nominative	—
Genitive	suī
Dative	sibi
Accusative	sē
Ablative	sē

17.5 Interrogative

17.5.1 *quis, quid* - who? which? what?

Singular

Case	M/F	N
Nominative	quis	quid
Genitive	cuius	cuius
Dative	cui	cui
Accusative	quem	quid
Ablative	quō	quō

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	quī	quae	quae
Genitive	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dative	quibus	quibus	quibus
Accusative	quōs	quās	quae

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Ablative	quibus	quibus	quibus

17.6 Relative

17.6.1 *quī, quae, quod* - who, which, that

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	quī	quae	quod
Genitive	cuius	cuius	cuius
Dative	cui	cui	cui
Accusative	quem	quam	quod
Ablative	quō	quā	quō

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	quī	quae	quae
Genitive	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dative	quibus	quibus	quibus
Accusative	quōs	quās	quae
Ablative	quibus	quibus	quibus

18 Vocabulary lists

The lists linked below give dictionary forms and very brief definitions for ca. 250 of the most frequently occurring words in Hyginus' *Fabulae*. You can find very full entries with examples of usage in the searchable online version of Lewis and Short's *Latin Dictionary* (from Furman University).

These 250 terms represent roughly 2/3 of all the words in Hyginus' text!

The vocabulary lists use j and v for consonantal sounds, i and u for vocalic sounds. This is the same spelling convention that you will find in the Lewis-Short Dictionary. Remember that we often use texts with different spelling conventions (e.g., *i* for both consonantal and vocalic sounds), so that to find a vocabulary entry for a form like *iussit* (third singular perfect active indicative), you would look under j to find *jubeo*, *jubēre*, *jussi*, *jussus*.

19 Prepositions in Hyginus, *Fabulae*

- ab or a+ *abl*: away from
- ad + *acc*: towards
- apud + *acc*: at, with, by, near
- cum + *abl*: with
- de + *abl*: from, down from
- ex + *abl*: out of
- in + *abl*: in
- in + *acc*: into
- inter + *acc*: between, among
- ob + *acc*: on account of
- per + *acc*: through
- post + *acc*: after
- pro + *abl*: in front of, on behalf of
- propter + *acc*: on account of
- super + *acc*: above, on top of

20 Pronouns in Hyginus, *Fabulae*

- ego: *personal pronoun*, I
- hic, haec, hoc: *demonstrative pronoun*, this one
- ille, illa, illud: *demonstrative pronoun*, that one
- ipse: *intensifying pronoun*, **he** (himself), **she** herself
- is, ea, id: *demonstrative pronoun*, he, she, it
- qui, quae, quod: *relative pronoun*, who, which
- quis, quid: *interrogative pronoun*, who, what
- quisque: *indefinite pronoun*, whoever
- sui: *reflexive pronoun* himself, herself

21 Most frequent verbs in Hyginus, *Fabulae*

- accipio, accipere, accepi, acceptus: *to receive, to perceive*
- adduco, adducere, adduxi, adductus: *to lead or conduct*
- aio (*irregular, exists only in a few forms*): *to say, assert*
- amitto, amittere, amisi, amissus: *to dismiss, send away, to lose*
- amo, amare, amavi, amatus: *to love*
- appello, appellare, appelavi, appellatus: *to address, name*
- audio, audire, audivi, auditus: *to hear*
- cano, canere, cecini, cantus: *to sing*
- capio, capere, cepi, captus: *to seize*
- coepio, coepere, coepi, coeptus: *to begin*
- cognosco, cognoscere, cognovi, cognitus: *to know, become acquainted with*
- commuto, commutare, commutavi, commutatus: *to change, interchange*
- comprimo, comprimere, compressi, compressus: *to squeeze together, to repress*
- concumbo, concumbere, concubui, concubitus: *to sleep with*
- conicio (*or coicio, or conjicio*), conicere, conjeci, conjectus: *to cast, to connect, to discuss*
- constituo, constituere, constitui, constitutus: *to establish, prepare*
- consumo, consumere, consumpsi, consumptus: *to devour*
- contendo, contendere, contendi, contentus: *to extend, to exert, to strive with*
- converto, convertere, converti, conversus: *to turn, alter*
- cresco, crescere, crevi, cretus: *to be born, appear*
- dedo, dedere, dedidi, deditus: *to give away, give up, surrender*
- defero, deferre, detuli, delatus: *to carry away, convey*
- dico, dicere, dixi, dictus: *to say*
- do, dare, dedi, datus: *to give*
- duco, ducere, duxi, ductus: *to lead*
- eo, ire, ii or ivi, -: *to go*
- exeo, exire, exivi or exii, exitus: *to go out*
- expono, exponere, exposui, expositus: *to set forth, expose*
- facio, facere, feci, factus: *to make*
- fero, ferre, tuli, latus: *to bear, carry*

- fio, fiēri, -, factus: *to become, be produced*
- habeo, habēre, habui, habitus: *to have*
- immolo, immolare, immolavi, immolatus: *to sacrifice*
- impono, imponēre, imposui, impositus: *to set upon or over*
- intereo, interire, interii or iterivi, iteritus: *to perish, be ruined*
- interficio, interficēre, interfeci, interfectus: *destroy, kill*
- invenio, invenire, inveni, inventus: *to discover, find out*
- irascor, irasci, -, iratus: *to be angry, enraged*
- jubeo, jubēre, jussi, jussus: *to order, prescribe*
- jungo, jungēre, junxi, junctus: *to connect, join together*
- libero, liberare, liberavi, liberatus: *to free*
- libet, libēre, libuit, libitus (*impersonal*): *to be pleasing or agreeable*
- loco, locare, locavi, locatus: *to place, arrange*
- mitto, mittēre, misi, missus: *to send*
- moneo, monēre, monui, monitus: *to warn*
- morior, mori, -, mortuus: *to die*
- nascor, nasci, -, natus: *to be born*
- neco, necare, necavi, necatus: *to slay*
- nego, negare, negavi, negatus: *to say no, refuse*
- nitor, niti, -, nissus or nixus: *to lean on, to strive for*
- nolo, nolle, nolui, -: *to wish...not, to be unwilling*
- nomino, nominare, nominavi, nominatus: *to name, call by name*
- obicio or objicio, obicēre, objeci, objectus: *to throw before, oppose*
- occido, occidēre, occidi, occisus: *strike down, slay*
- ostendo, ostendēre, ostendi, ostensus: *to show, expose*
- pareo, parēre, parui, paritus: *to be present, to wait on*
- pario, parēre, peperit, paritus: *to bear, give birth to*
- percutio, percutēre, percussus, percussus: *to strike, thrust or pierce through*
- perduco, perducēre, perduxit, perductus: *to guide, lead through*
- pereor, perire, perivi or perii, peritus: *to pass away, vanish*
- persequor, persequi, -, persecutus: *to follow, chase, pursue*
- pervenio, pervenire, perveni, perventus: *to come to, arrive at*
- peto, petēre, petivi or petii, petitus: *to attack, demand, seek*
- polliceor, pollicēri, -, pollicitus: *to promise*
- pono, ponēre, posui, positus: *to place*
- possum, posse, potui, -: *to be able*
- praecipito, praecipitare, praecipitavi, praecipitatus: *to cast down, to press, hasten*
- procreo, procreare, procreavi, procreatus: *to bring forth, beget*

- proficio, proficere, profeci, profectus: *to advance, make progress, obtain*
- proficiscor, proficisci, -, profectus: *to set out, depart*
- profugio, profugere, profugi, -: *to flee, escape*
- quaero, quaerere, quaesivi, quaesitus: *to seek for, acquire*
- rapio, rapere, rapui, raptus: *to seize and carry off*
- recipio, recipere, recepi, receptus: *regain, recover*
- redeo, redire, redivi or redii, reditus: *to go or come back, return*
- refero, referre, rettuli or retuli, relatus: *to return, restore*
- regno, regnare, regnavi, regnatus: *to rule*
- respondeo, respondere, respondi, responsus: *to answer, reply*
- rogo, rogare, rogavi, rogatus: *to ask*
- sacro, sacrare, sacravi, sacratus: *to consecrate, dedicate*
- sepelio, sepelire, sepelivi or sepelii, sepultus: *to bury*
- servo, servare, servavi, servatus: *to save, preserve*
- soleo, solere, solui, solitus: *to be accustomed*
- sum, esse, fui, futurus: *to be*
- tollo, tollere, sustuli, sublatu: *to raise up, elevate*
- trado, tradere, tradidi, traditus: *to hand over, deliver, surrender*
- venio, venire, veni, ventus: *to come*
- video, videre, vidi, visus: *to see*
- vinco, vincere, vici, victum: *to defeat, conquer*
- vivo, vivere, vixi, victus: *to live, be alive*
- voco, vocare, vocavi, vocatus: *to call together, summon*
- volo, velle, volui, -: *to wish, want*

22 Most frequent nouns in Hyginus, *Fabulae*

- amor, amoris *m*: *love*
- annus, anni *m*: *year*
- aper, apri *m*: *wild boar*
- aqua, aquae *f*: *water*
- arbor, arboris *f*: *tree*
- arma, armorum *n* (*pl* only): *arms, weapons*
- aurum, auri *n*: *gold*
- avis, avis *f*: *bird*
- beneficium, benefici *n*: *s*
- canis, canis *m* or *f*: *dog*
- caput, capitis *n*: *head*
- conjugium, conjugii *n*: *marriage*
- conjunx, conjugis *m* or *f*: *husband, wife*
- corpus, corporis *n*: *body*
- deus, dei *m*: *god*
- dies, diei *m*: *day*
- draco, draconis *m*: *serpent, dragon*
- dux, ducis *m*: *leader*
- equus, equi *m*: *horse*
- femina, feminae *f*: *woman*
- fides, fidei *f*: *faith, trustworthiness*
- filia, filiae *f*: *daughter*
- filius, filii *m*: *son*
- flumen, fluminis *n*: *river*
- forma, formae *f*: *shape, appearance*
- frater, fratris *m*: *brother*
- fulmen, fulminis *n*: *lightning*
- gladius, gladii *m*: *sword*
- homo, hominis *m*: *human being*
- hospes, hospitis *m*: *host, guest*

- hospitium, hospitii *n*: *hospitality*
- infans, infantis *m* or *f*: *infant, small child*
- insula, insulae *f*: *island*
- liber, liberi *m*: *child*
- locus, loci *m*: *place*
- ludus, ludi *m*: *play, game*
- mare, maris *n*: *sea*
- mater, matris *f*: *mother*
- mons, montis *m*: *mountain*
- mors, mortis *f*: *death*
- munus, muneris *n*: *work, service, job*
- murus, muri *m*: *city wall*
- navis, navis *f*: *ship*
- nomen, nominis *n*: *name*
- nox, noctis *f*: *night*
- numerus, numeri *m*: *number*
- nutrix, nutricis *f*: *nurse*
- nympa, nympae *f*: *nymph*
- oppidum, oppidi *n*: *town*
- parens, parentis *m*: *parent*
- pars, partis *f*: *part, portion*
- pastor, pastoris *m*: *shepherd*
- pater, patris *m*: *father*
- patria, patriae *f*: *home country*
- pecus, pecoris *n*: *cattle, herd*
- pellis, pellis *f*: *skin, hide*
- pes, pedis *m*: *foot*
- proci, proci *m*: *sutor*
- puer, pueri *m*: *boy*
- regnum, regni *n*: *kingdom*
- res, rei *f*: *thing, matter, affair*
- rex, regis *m*: *king*
- sacerdos, sacerdotis *m* or *f*: *priest, priestess*
- sagitta, sagitta *f*: *arrow*
- sepultura, sepulturae *f*: *burial*
- signum, signi *n*: *sign, token*
- sol, solis *m*: *sun*
- soror, sororis *f*: *sister*

- sors, sortis *f*: *lot, fate*
- stadium, stadii *n*: *stadium*
- taurus, tauri *m*: *bull*
- templum, templi *n*: *temple*
- tempus, temporis *n*: *time*
- terra, terrae *f*: *land, earth*
- uxor, uxoris *f*: *wife*
- vestis, vestis *f*: *clothing*
- vir, viri *m*: *man*
- virgo, virginis *f*: *young woman*
- voluntas, voluntatis *f*: *wish, will*

23 Most frequent adjectives in Hyginus, *Fabulae*

- alius, alia, aliud: *another*
- alter, altera, alterum: *other (of two)*
- ceterus, cetera, ceterum: *the other; the remainder*
- duo, duae, duo (**irregular**): *two*
- idem, eadem, idem: *the same*
- inferus, infera, inferum: *lower*
- liber, libera, liberum: *free*
- magnus, magna, magnum: *great, large*
- mortalis, mortale: *mortal, subject to death*
- multus, multa, multum: *much (sg.), many (pl.)*
- omnis, omnis: *each (sg.), all (pl.)*
- primus, prima, primum: *first*
- regius, regia, regium: *royal, kingly*
- sacer, sacra, sacrum: *holy, sacred*
- septem (*indeclinable*): *seven*
- socius, socia, socium: *allied*
- suus, sua, suum: ****** reflexive possessive adjective, *his own, her own*
- tantus, tanta, tantum: *so great*
- unus, una, unum: *a single*

24 Most frequent adverbs in Hyginus, *Fabulae*

- ibi: *there*
- inde: *from there*
- ita: *so*
- item: *likewise, also*
- non: *not*
- postea: *later*
- tunc: *then*

25 Most frequent conjunctions in Hyginus, *Fabulae*

- *atque* or *ac*: and, and besides, and even
- *autem*: however, nonetheless
- *cum*: when
- *dum*: while
- *et*: and
- *itaque*: and so, accordingly
- *nam*: for
- *neque* or *nec*: not, and not, also not
- *ne*: *conjunction introducing several kinds of negative clauses*
- *postquam*: after
- *quia*: since
- *quod*: because
- *quoniam*: since
- *sed*: but
- *sive*: or
- *si*: if
- *ubi*: where, when
- *unde*: from where
- *ut*: *conjunction introducing several kinds of subordinate clauses* date: September 6, 2022 —

26 *Lingua Latina Legenda*: an open-source introduction to Latin

This open-source textbook is one part of a project to develop a new two-semester introduction to Latin at the College of the Holy Cross. Our curriculum is based on these principles:

- the course emphasizes authentic examples of language, and is organized around a target text (in this textbook, the *Fabulae* of Hyginus). Instead of composing made-up Latin, we draw on the target text as much as possible.
- we follow modern principles of language pedagogy in presenting first those features of language (syntactic, morphological, lexical) that are frequent in Latin, are inherently complex, and are most different from English forms of expression and thought.
- we determine the sequence of the textbook's topics based on computational analysis of the features needed to read unaltered passages of Hyginus.
- throughout the curriculum, we link the study of Latin to reflection on contemporary issues.

Our work at Holy Cross is taking place through the college's Scholarship in Action program, and we gratefully acknowledge its support.

27 About this textbook

The current on-line version of this textbook is simultaneously being drafted and used in Latin 101 at the College of the Holy Cross in 2022-2023.

We expect to complete the first half of the textbook through chapter 5, “Subordination,” in one college semester. Chapters are not intended to take equal amounts of time. Chapter 3, “Inflection of verbs, nouns, pronouns, and adjectives” requires approximately 6 weeks, and Chapter 5, “Subordination,” about a month; the intervening Chapter 4, “Richer sentences,” covers much less new material, and provides an opportunity to apply and reinforce the fundamental material from Chapter 3. At Holy Cross, this chapter falls around the time of our fall break, so is also a useful moment to regroup and refresh material covered in the first half of the semester.

You can download a dated PDF of the current draft from <https://github.com/LinguaLatina/textbook/raw/master/pdf/l3.pdf>.

The draft of this material that was used in 2021-2022 is included in the textbook website at <https://lingualatina.github.io/textbook/2021-2022/>.

28 Preliminaries

28.1 Alphabet and pronunciation

Latin is a historical language. Although it has never been lost, and has been used continuously for thousands of years, it has survived as a language we must learn as a second language: for many centuries, there have been no native speakers of Latin. In different parts of the world today, scholars use different conventions for pronouncing Latin. Italians pronounce Latin like Italian, Germans pronounce Latin like German, and the British pronunciation of Latin is hard even to describe.

Americans generally adopt a pronunciation (presented here) that reflects our knowledge of how individual letters and combinations of letters were pronounced, but we should not imagine that we can accurately reproduce the accent of a speaker of classical Latin.

28.2 The classical Latin alphabet: a quick guide

Our alphabet derives directly from the classical Latin alphabet, and has the same letters in the same order, except that classical Latin did not have J, V or W. Instead the letters I and U were used to write both pure vowel sounds and a semi-vowel or consonant. In addition, in the classical period, K, Y and Z were used only to spell words borrowed from Greek.

28.2.1 Consonant sounds

Consonants were mostly pronounced as in modern English, with the following notes:

- C and G are always “hard” (like “cut” and “go”, never like “cease” or “gyrate”).
- S is always unvoiced (like “cease”), never a z-sound (like “ease”)
- when I spelled a consonant sound, it was pronounced like English “y”
- when U spelled a consonant sound, it was pronounced like English “w”
- the double consonant PH came to be pronounced like F

28.2.2 Vowels

The five vowels a, e, i, o and u have “pure” sounds, without any glide, any approximately:

Vowel	English example of sound	Latin word to practice
A	aha	<i>mater</i> , “mother”
E	deck	<i>terra</i> , “earth”
I	see	<i>hic</i> , “he, this person”
O	no	<i>homo</i> , “person, human being”
U	do	<i>factum</i> , “deed, accomplishment”

Vowels could be long or short; as in a modern language like German, the long version of the vowel was literally held for a longer time than the short version.

Two vowels together could be pronounced as a single *diphthong*: these originally sounded like the two vowels pronounced successively but blending the first into the second.

Try pronouncing the following diphthongs in these Latin words, taken from Hyginus *Fabulae*:

Diphthong	Latin word
ae	<i>quaero</i> , “I seek”
au	<i>autem</i> , “however”
ei	<i>Deianira</i> , a wife of Hercules
eu	<i>Theseus</i> , an Athenian hero
oe	<i>poena</i> , “penalty, punishment”
ui	<i>fluit</i> , “it flows”

28.2.3 Orthography

Like the inscriptions and papyri surviving from the classical period, many Latin manuscripts and printed editions of Latin texts use only I and U. Others use I for both vocalic and consontal sounds, but distinguish U and V. Still others use I, J, U and V. Long and short vowels were not distinguished in writing.

In this text book, when we introduce forms and new vocabulary, we will sometimes include long and short marks on vowels, but when we cite passages of Hyginus, we will normally write vowels without quantity mark,

and will use only I and U (not J and V).

28.3 Syllables and accent

28.3.1 Syllables and their quantity

Latin words have as many syllables as there are vowels or diphthongs: *Her-cu-les* *poe-na*, *quae-ro*.

A syllable is **long** if:

1. it has a long vowel or a diphthong, (e.g., the first syllable of *Rō-ma* is long)
2. *or* a short vowel is followed by a cluster of two consonants, (e.g., the first syllable of *Her-cu-les* is long because the *e* is followed by two consonants, *rc*)
3. *except* that the cluster is **short** if the cluster is *l* or *r* following one of : *b, d, g, p, t, c*, or the combination *ph* (e.g., the first syllable of *pă-tris* is short because the cluster after a short vowel is *t* followed by *r*).

Other syllables with short vowels are **short** (e.g., the second syllable of *Her-cŭ-les* is short).

28.3.2 Accent

Every Latin word with more than one syllable had a stress accent on either the next to last syllable (sometimes called the **penult**), or the one before it (the **antepenult**). The placement of the accent depends on whether the next to last syllable is long or short. If the penult is long, then it is accented; otherwise, the syllable before it is accented. Examples:

- *a-mī-cus*, “friend,” has a long penult: pronounce it *amícus*.
- *Her-cŭ-les* has a short penult: pronounce it *Hércules*

If a word has only two syllables, the penult is accented no matter what:

- pronounce *căp-ŭt*, “head” as *cáput*.

29 Inflection of verbs, nouns, pronouns, and adjectives

In Unit 1, we will look at how inflection works in the Latin language. We begin by with the concept of an inflected language and detailing how Latin's use of inflection differs from English' use of it. The key takeaway here will be that while English primarily relies on word order to convey grammatical function, Latin uses word endings to do so.

We will then move to examine the various different substantives – noun, pronoun, and adjective – and how they are inflected in Latin. In spite of their different usages, all these substantive forms have three characteristics – case, number, and grammatical gender – and these characteristics signal the substantive's role in a sentence. Consequently, we will learn how to recognize, form, analyze, and translate substantives and substantive phrases based on these characteristics. To accomplish this task, we will become familiar with the way that dictionary entries for substantives work and especially how these entries help us to understand the rules for the inflection of the particular substantive, something that is often referred to as a noun's declension.

We will build on our discussion of substantive inflection by looking at verbal inflection. We will learn about the five characteristics of verbs – person, number, tense, voice, and mood – and how these characteristics create meaning in a Latin sentence. As we did with substantives, we will learn how to recognize, form, analyze, and translate verbs based on these characteristics. Once again, we will spend time learning about dictionary entries for verbs and how the information contained therein can help us to better understand a specific verbal form. We will also learn some of the rules for verbal inflection, i.e. conjugation.

The last part of this unit will look at how Latin puts together these inflected forms at the sentence level. We will learn about different types of sentence structures found in Latin, the particular collocations of verbal and substantive forms that they use, and the way that we translate these forms.

29.1 Objectives

By the end of Unit 1, you will be able to:

- Explain the basic principles of inflection in the Latin language as well as how it differs from English
- Articulate the different features of substantives (nouns, adjectives, and pronouns) and the information that these features provide

- Recognize and produce substantive inflection patterns and analyze their grammatical function in sentences Articulate the different features of verbal forms and the information that they provide
- Recognize and produce some basic verbal inflection patterns and analyze their grammatical function in sentences
- Explain how different grammatical features of language shape the way we understand the world around us

29.2 Latin: an inflected language

29.2.1 Inflection

One of the most striking differences between Latin and English is how Latin changes the form of words to indicate their function in a sentence, where English uses word order. We call this systematic change in forms **inflection**.

English has only limited grammatical inflection today, but most English nouns have different forms indicating whether they are singular or plural: “dog” means only one, but “dogs” means more than one. Adding an -s to a noun is a regular pattern in English. We could say that -s is the regular inflectional ending to indicate the grammatical property of *number* for a noun.

Aside: English is related to Latin as part of the larger IndoEuropean family of languages, and in earlier phases of its history had a much fuller system of inflection, comparable to Latin.

In the present tense, English verbs in the *third person singular* (he, she, it) also change form to indicate number: “she says” but “they say.” We use singular verb forms only with singular subjects, and plural verb forms with plural subjects: “The dogs run,” but “The dog runs.”

Some English nouns change their form in less predictable ways: “mouse” is a singular noun, and “mice” is plural. Native speakers learn this without thinking about it; people who learn English as a second language have to memorize this as an exception to the regular pattern of adding -s to form plurals.

A few English nouns do not change their form to indicate number. “Moose” could refer to one or more of the largest mammal in the deer family. (And “deer” poses the same problem: one or more?) A native speaker of English can say, “The moose walks,” and “The moose walk.” The verb makes it clear that in the first sentence, “moose” is singular, but plural in the the second sentence.

29.2.2 Function and form

Like English, Latin uses inflection to show the number of nouns and verbs, but Latin’s system of inflection far more extensive than English.

English, for example, follows a strict word order to indicate subject, verb and direct object of a sentence. “Dog bites man” is an everyday sentence: the subject is “Dog,” and the direct object is “man.” “Man bites dog” is a headline: the man is now doing the biting, and dog is the recipient of the action.

Latin most frequently (but not always) places the verb at the end of a sentence. You could equally comfortably have a three-word sentence in the order Object-Subject-Verb, or Subject-Object-Verb, because the inflected form of the subject and the object will show clearly what role each word plays.

Aside You will probably never find the order English requires: Subject-Verb-Object! When we read Latin, and we practice our skills with Latin composition, we’ll want to consider what nuance or emphasis is expressed through different choices of Latin’s more flexible word order.

See the following introduction to inflection from Dominic Machado for Latin examples drawn from Hyginus’ *Fabulae* of how Latin inflection can work>

29.3 Verbal units

When people listen to their native language, we don’t simply hear a stream of sound: we intuitively cluster meaningful units together. When we learn to read, we similarly learn how to recognize clusters of letters and words, to “chunk” the text into meaningful units.

As you learn how to read Latin, we will emphasize this crucial skill. Rather than simply analyzing one word at a time reading left to right, you will learn how to see sentences and whole paragraphs as compositions of smaller pieces, each with a recognizable structure and meaning.

We will use the term **verbal unit** to refer to the most important underlying structure in Greek. A **verb** is a word that expresses an action or a state of being. (As Schoolhouse Rock put it decades ago, “Verb: that’s what happening.”) A verbal unit combines some form of a verb with a subject to express a complete idea.

Compared to English, Latin has an rich system of verb forms to create different kinds of verbal units. We will see, forexample, how Latin can use participles to form verbal units quite different from anything in English.

The most important verbal unit in Latin, however, is the **finite verb**. Every sentence has at least one verbal unit expressed with a finite verb plus a subject, even if these are only implied. Subjects and verbs can be implied in English, too: if someone asks you “Coffee or tea?” they are implying “Would you like coffee or tea?” a sentence with a subject (“you”) and verb (“would like”).

We have borrowed our own word “verb” from Latin grammarians. They referred to verbs with the term *verbum*, an everyday word that could mean a “sentence,” “expression,” or even “conversation.” *verbum* is a complete idea. Even if you leave out every other word of a sentence, the finite verb constitutes a complete statement.

29.4 Finite verbs

Finite verb forms have five properties: **person**, **number**, **tense**, **mood**, and **voice**. To properly identify a finite verb form, you must identify all five properties. Latin finite verb forms contain all of this information in the verb form itself. In English, we often need other words to convey some of this information, such as subject pronouns to convey the person and number, and auxiliary (or “helping”) verbs to express tense, mood, and voice.

29.4.1 Person

A verb’s person expresses the subject of the verb in relation to the “speaker” of the sentence.

1. The first person (*I* or *we* in English) subject includes the speaker.
2. The second person (*you* in English) subject is the addressee(s) of the speaker.
3. The third person (*he, she, it, they* in English) subject is a person or thing separate from the speaker and addressee.

29.4.2 Number

Number combines with person in describing the subject of verb. It indicates when the subject is **singular** or **plural**. In English, for example, the first person singular is *I* while first person plural is *we*.

29.4.3 Tense

The **tense** of a finite verb describes the time of the action. Latin has six tenses: three of them refer to present or future time, name the **present**, **future**, and **future perfect** tenses. Three other tenses refer to past time: the **imperfect**, **perfect** and **pluperfect** tenses.

29.4.4 Mood

The mood of a verb indicates the function of the expression and the nature of the action in the speaker’s conception. “Mood” and “mode” come from the same root in English: the “mood” of a verb is the “mode” in which the verb is operating.

Latin has moods:

1. the **indicative**, used to express a statement or question of a factual nature (in the eyes of the speaker) in the past, present, or future.
2. the **imperative**, used to give a command

3. the **subjunctive** mood has many uses in subordinate clauses, and is also used to express potential or possible action.

29.4.5 Voice

Voice expresses the relationship between the action of the verb and the subject. Like English, Latin has two voices: **active**, in which the subject is performing the action of the verb (“I love”), and **passive**, in which the subject is receiving the action of the verb (“I am loved”).

29.5 Principal parts of verbs

All verb forms in these many combinations of person, number, tense, mood and voice (as well as forms we will learn later, such as infinitives and participles), are formed using the verb’s **principal parts**.

English verbs have a system of principal parts, too, although native speakers may not think about them that way. In English, the principal parts can include the present tense, the past tense, and the past participle: for example, play, played, played; swim, swam, swum; go, went, gone; do, did, done.

Latin verbs have four principal parts (although for some verbs not all parts may exist). In a glossary or a lexicon, Latin verbs are listed according to the first principal part, and so if you are looking a verb up you will need to be able to move from a verb form made from any principal part to its first principal part in order to find it in the lexicon.

29.6 Forms of principal parts

Two of the principal parts, the first and third, are finite verbs in a first person singular form (“I”) of the indicative mood. We’ll use them to find the stems we can modify with endings to create finite verb forms. The other two are forms of the verb we’ll learn to use in following chapters.

1. The **first principal part** is the first person singular in the *present* active indicative (or the present passive indicative if active forms do not exist). Drop the
2. The **second principal** is an *infinitive*. (We’ll begin learning about uses of the infinitive in units 2 and 3.) You’ll look at the second principal part to find what set of endings to use with a stem.
3. The **third principal part** is the first person singular in the *perfect* active indicative. If the verb has no active forms, it has no third principal part.
4. The **fourth principal part** is a *participle*. We’ll learn in this unit how to use it create perfect passive forms.

29.6.1 Verb conjugations

Latin verbs are organized into four **conjugations**, a grouping where they share common endings. To find what conjugation a verb belongs to, look at the second principal part. In regular verbs, it will have one of four possible endings corresponding to the four conjugations.

- *āre* : first conjugation
- *ēre* : second conjugation
- *ĕre*: third conjugation
- *īre*: fourth conjugation

29.6.2 Examples of principal parts

Principal parts are listed in order, 1-4. Memorize these the principal parts of these twelve common verbs that you will see repeatedly in reading Hyginus.

- *amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus* - to love
- *audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus* - to hear
- *capiō, capĕre, cēpī, captus* - to take, seize
- *dō, dāre, dedī, datus* - to give
- *dūcō, dūcĕre, dūxī, ductus* - to lead
- *faciō, facĕre, fēcī, factus* - to make, do
- *fugiō, fugĕre, fūgī, fugitus* - to flee
- *habeō, habĕre, habuī, habitus* - to have
- *interficiō, interficĕre, interfēcī, interfectus* - to kill
- *mittō, mittĕre, mīsī, missus* - to send
- *veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventus* - to come
- *videō, vidĕre, vīdī, visus* - to see;

29.6.3 Looking for patterns

As you learn principal parts, you should practice noticing patterns and then using those patterns to help you recognize, retrieve, use, and even take an educated guess at, a principal part.

Two good examples from your unit 1 vocabulary list are *amō* and *audiō*. Regular nouns of the first conjugation will change in exactly the same ways as *amō*. Drop the *-āre* ending from the second principal part, and you can reliably produce the others by add *-ō* to create the first part, *-āvī* to create the third part and *-ātus* for the fourth part.

Similarly, for regular verbs of the fourth conjugation, drop the *-īre* ending from the second part, and add *-iō* for the first part, *-īvī* for the second part, and *-ītus* for the fourth part.

29.7 The perfect active tense

The form of a finite verb in Latin expresses the subject as well as the verb: it is a complete verbal unit by itself. Example: the form *venit* means “he came, arrived” or “she came, arrived”; the form *venērunt* means “they came, arrived.” These are already complete sentences that do not need a separate word for “he,” “she” or “they.”

29.7.1 The indicative mood and narrating events in the past

As already described above, finite verbs have five properties: person, number, tense, mood, and voice.

The **indicative** is one of the three moods of the Latin verb. It is the mode of verb used for narrating factual events, and for that reason is frequently seen in most texts.

Latin has more than one tense for narrating events in the past, but they differ in **aspect** — that is, how to think of or picture the action the verb is representing.

- the **perfect tense** expresses an action as single and simple, without indication of its completion or continuation
- the **imperfect tense** expresses an action as continuous, started, ongoing, habitual or in any way incomplete

The choice of verb tense, then, involves not only an indication that the events happened in the past, but other information about the event. Do you want to emphasize it as a single incident? Choose the perfect indicative if so. Or do you want to indicate that it happened over a length of time, was repeated or habitual, perhaps was started but not completed? The imperfect indicative will give you the means to add those shades of meaning.

29.7.2 Meaning of the perfect indicative

The perfect indicative represents the action as *single, simple, distinct*, the equivalent of a snapshot of the action. The tense that is the closest to this idea in English is the “simple past,” the past tense formed in the active voice by adding *-ed* to the verb stem, or made by changes to the stem, with no other “helping” verbs. Examples of the “simple past” in the active voice: “He walked,” “she ran,” “they watched,” “She taught,” “they learned.”

To understand a verb form, you must take into account all five properties: person, number, tense, mood and voice. In the active voice, the subject performs the action. In the passive voice, the subject receives the action.

To form finite verbs in the perfect tense and active voice, you will use the *third* principal part. Remember that this part is already an indicative form of the perfect active, namely the first person singular. When you see a vocabulary listing like this:

veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventus, "to come"

you know that *vēnī* means “I came.”

29.7.3 Forming and analyzing the perfect active

The general pattern you’ll follow for forming inflected words is:

- find the correct stem
- apply the correct ending

The *stem* dictates what possible tenses and voices can be formed; the *ending* identifies the person, number and mood.

The third principal part is used for all forms of the perfect active. To find its stem, drop the final *-i*. For *venio*, then:

(1) *veni* → *ven-*

Let’s express “They arrived,” a complete sentence in the indicative mood. We to add the ending that expresses the third plural of the indicative, which is *-ērunt*

(2) *ven* + *ērunt* → *venērunt*

Voilà! You’ve just expressed the English idea “They arrived.” with the complete Latin sentence *venērunt*.

To analyze a Latin verb form, you can mentally reverse the process: if you isolate what ending is used with what stem, you can identify the form. When you see *venērunt* in a text, you can tell yourself that since *-ērunt* is the third plural.

All four conjugations work exactly the same way and use exactly the same endings for the perfect active indicative. Memorize this pair of endings:

Person	Singular	Plural
Third	-it	ērunt

Here is a complete example with translation using the verb *fugiō, fugēre, fūgī, fugitus* - “to flee.”

Person	Singular	Plural
Third	fugit, “he, she fled”	fugērunt, “they fled”

29.8 The perfect passive

29.8.1 Meaning of the perfect passive

In the passive voice, the subject of the verb is not the person or thing performing the action, but the one receiving it. The sentence “As a baby, Hercules killed two serpents with his hands” is in the **active voice**. “Hercules” is the subject; the verb, “killed,” is in the active voice, and “two serpents” is the direct object of the verb. In the active voice, the direct object is what receives the action.

But we could turn this around. “Two serpents were killed by Hercules” is in the **passive voice**. The grammatical subject is “two serpents,” but the serpents are not performing the action of killing: they’re receiving it. The two sentences mean approximately the same thing (although they put a slightly different emphasis on what’s important about the statement).

For both sentences, Latin will use a perfect tense, since the action of killing the serpents was a single, completed, one-time act. Hyginus uses the verb *neco*, a regular first-conjugation verb (so its principal parts are *neco*, *necāre*, *necauī*, *necatus*). If we want to tell the story in the active voice, Hercules will be the subject, so we would use the third person singular form, *necauit*.

But what if we wanted to turn it around, to make the serpents the subject of a passive verb, “the serpents were killed”? Let’s look at how to form the perfect passive.

29.8.2 Formation of the perfect passive

In the perfect tense, the passive voice forms are **compound forms**. They use a form of the verb “to be” together with a form of the fourth principal part, which (as we’ll learn in detail in unit 4) is a **participle**. This is actually quite similar to the way English forms the past tense in the passive: the sentence “the serpents were killed” uses a form of the form “to be” plus a participle, “killed,” to express a passive voice action in the past. Latin uses present tense forms of “to be,” however. You’ll need to memorize these two forms:

Person	Singular	Plural
Third	est	sunt

The fourth principal part of *neco* is *necatus*, and used together with the verb “to be” creates a perfect passive form: *necatus est* means, “He was killed.”

The participle changes form its depending on the subject of the sentence, by applying different endings to the stem of the fourth part. We’ll learn more about grammatical gender later in this chapter, but for now, let’s note that the distinct forms of the fourth principal part will tell us the **gender** of the subject, and will match the **number** of the verb.

To find the stem of the fourth part, drop *-us*.

(1) *necatus* -> *necat-*

Then apply one of these endings:

Gender	Singular	Plural
Masculine	-us	-i
Feminine	-a	-ae
Neuter	-um	-a

We’ll consider the serpents to be masculine, and we know we have more than one of them, so we’ll use the ending *-i*.

(2) *necat-* + *-i* -> *necati*

Our form of “to be” will also be plural, to match the number of serpents, so our final statement will be *necati sunt*.

This is actually a complete sentence in Latin: “they (masculine) were killed.” Notice that it is possible to make a statement in the passive voice without indicating who did the action. This use of the passive is much beloved by people who want to avoid taking responsibility. (Consider an English sentence like, “Mistakes were made.”)

- use 4th principal part, adjective. Will look more at adjectives in this chapter, but note:
 - gender, number in a subject form (nominative case)
 - **agreement** among 4th part, *sum* and expressed or implied subject
- memorize endings:

Examples from Hyginus

29.9 The imperfect indicative

The imperfect indicative is another way of narrating factual events in the past. As we have seen, the perfect views an action as a single action completed in the past. The imperfect, by contrast, expresses an action that is incomplete, repeated, continuous or ongoing, habitual, or in some other way *not* viewed as single and complete. To express similar ideas, English uses additional “helping” verbs: “she was going,” “he started to go,” “they used to go.”

For example, Hyginus describes the Cyclops by saying “he had one eye.” In English, we can use the simple past tense “had” to express this, but Latin makes clear that this was not a single, one-time action. It was almost a state of being: the Cyclops *always* had one eye, so Hyginus uses the imperfect in the phrase

unum oculum habebat.

habebat is the third singular of the imperfect indicative active. Let’s look at how it’s formed.

29.9.1 Formation of the imperfect tense

You form both the active and passive voice of the imperfect tense from the *second* principal part. As with the perfect active, you find the stem, and add the appropriate ending for the person, number and voice that you want.

- stem: drop *-re* of second part
- endings same for all conjugations.

The complete process to form the imperfect tense then looks like:

- (1) start by dropping *-re* from the second part:

habēre -> *habē-*

- (2) Add the appropriate ending. For this chapter, you should memorize the third person* endings for singular and plural (listed here).

habē- + *-bat* -> *habebat*

Person and Number	Active ending	Passive ending
third singular	-bat	-batur
third plural	-bant	-bantur

The passive voice works in exactly the same way. Hyginus tells us that one of the Argonauts was Lynceus, who had a kind of night vision superpower: he could see in the dark because “he was not hindered by any darkness.” Hyginus uses the verb *inhibebatur* in the imperfect to express the continuous, repeated event: Lynceus was *never* bothered by darkness. The verb *inhibeo*, “to restrain, prevent” is a compound of *habeo* with the following principal parts:

inhibeo, inhibēre, inhibui, inhibitus

- (1) Find the stem by dropping *-re* from the second principal part:

inhibēre -> *inhibē-*

- (2) Add the right ending. Here, we want the third singular ending for the passive voice:

inhibē- + *-batur* -> *inhibebatur*

29.10 Nouns

A **noun** names a person, animal, place, or thing (whether that “thing” is concrete or abstract). Our term again comes from Latin grammarians: “noun” comes from Latin *nomen*, which generically just means “name.”

In a clause or sentence, nouns can fulfill various functions. A noun might be the subject of the verb: the person, place, or thing doing the action the verb represents. A noun might be the object of the verb, the recipient of the verb’s action, or the indirect (or secondary) object of that action. A noun might further describe another noun, or be paired with a preposition to act adjectivally or adverbially. It may describe the means by which the action of the verb happens. Or it might name the addressee of the sentence.

In Latin, the function of the noun is represented by its **case**, and the case is indicated by the ending attached to the noun’s stem. We have already seen that endings provide a great deal of information in a verb form, and the same is true for nouns. Identifying the case of a noun is key to understanding how it is functioning in that particular sentence.

29.10.1 Overview of nouns

All Latin nouns have three properties: **gender**, **case**, and **number**.

Every noun belongs to one of three grammatical **genders**. Although the grammatical genders are named **masculine**, **feminine**, and **neuter**, these are arbitrary linguistic categories, not biological gender. (You can learn more how ancient Latin grammarians thought about biological and grammatical gender in this unit’s section on “Latin in Action.”) There is no particular reason that the noun for “river”, *flumen*, is neuter, but the noun for “island”, *insula*, is feminine.

Case indicates the function of a noun in a sentence. Cases are expressed and identified by endings. There are six cases: **nominative**, **genitive**, **dative**, **accusative**, **ablative** and **vocative**. In this module we will look at some of the most important functions indicated by the nominative, genitive, dative, accusative and ablative cases.

Noun forms have the same two **numbers** as verb forms: singular, and plural.

29.10.1.1 Dictionary entry of nouns

The dictionary entry of a noun concisely encodes all the information you need to know in order to produce or recognize all of its cases and numbers. The first part tells you its nominative singular form, the second part is its genitive singular form, and the third crucial detail is its gender(s), usually abbreviat *m*, *f* or *n*.

29.10.1.1.1 Examples of dictionary entries The following vocabulary entries are included in the required vocabulary list for this module. Let's unpack their information more fully:

- *flumen, fluminis* n., "river"
- *insula, insulae* f., "island"

The first noun has the meaning "river." Its nominative singular form is *flumen*; the genitive singular form is *fluminis*; all of its forms are neuter.

The second noun has the meaning "island." Its nominative singular form is *insula*; the genitive singular form is *insulae*; all of its forms are feminine.

You'll also see this entry:

- *cānis, cānis* m. or f., "dog"

The listing "m. or f." means that the noun can be *either* grammatically masculine *or* grammatically feminine.

29.10.1.2 Declension

We use the term **declension** to refer to a group of nouns that share the same set of endings. In the first half of this course, we will focus on three frequent declensions of nouns that make up the overwhelming majority of noun forms you will see in reading Latin. Scholars of Latin creatively refer to as the **first**, **second** and **third declensions**. You can recognize the declension of a noun by looking at the ending of its genitive singular:

- *-ae*: first declension
- *-i*: second declension
- *-is*: third declension

29.11 The genitive case

The **genitive case** is used to relate one noun to another. (In fact, this is a characteristic feature of *all* the languages in the Indo-European family that includes Latin.) While you may often find that nouns in the genitive case are translated with the English preposition “of,” it is important to understand the range of underlying ideas expressed by the genitive in Latin.

29.11.1 Some general uses of the genitive

The complicated story of Procris and her husband Cephalus illustrates some common uses of the genitive case.

- *Possession*: Diana gave to Procris a hunting dog, and Hyginus refers to the *potentia canis*. *potentia* is a nominative noun, “power, strength;” *canis* is genitive singular, “dog.” Here, the genitive expresses *possession*: the dog possessed strength or power. In these instances, we might translate the genitive into English with the preposition “of” or with the possessive marker “s,” “the dog’s strength,” or “the strength of the dog.”
- *Subjective genitive or objective genitive*: Cephalus admired the dog greatly, and Hyginus refers to the *amor canis*. *amor*, *amoris* f. means “love, admiration”. There is always an ambiguity when the noun expressing a verbal idea is modified by a second noun in the genitive case, just as there is in an English phrase like “love of God.” Does that mean that God loves someone? If so, we would say it is a **subjective genitive**, since we are interpreting the meaning of the phrase “of God” as the equivalent of the subject of a verb “to love.” But it could equally mean the love that someone feels for God. We would call that an **objective genitive**, since we are interpreting “of God” as the equivalent of a direct object in a phrase like “they love God.” In this passage of Hyginus, the context makes it clear that he is referring to Cephalus’ love for or admiration of the hunting dog, not the dog’s love for Cephalus, but grammatically the *amor canis* is identical to what a pet owner could say to refer to their faithful dog’s love.

Hyginus’ story of Erechtheus’ four daughters illustrates another common use of the genitive to refer to a group or “whole,” when the noun it modifies names part of the whole or one among the group.

- *Partitive genitive or genitive of the whole*: Erechtheus’ daughters took an oath that if *one of them* died, the others would commit suicide. Hyginus expresses this with the phrase *una eārum*. As we’ll see in this chapter, *eārum* is the feminine genitive plural form of a pronoun meaning “them”; *una* is a nominative form meaning “one woman.”

29.12 The nominative case

The **nominative case** is a naming case. Its most frequent function is to indicate the **subject** of a finite verb.

The subject of a verb will match the person and number of the verb form: a *singular* noun in the nominative case will have a third person *singular* verb form, and a nominative *plural* noun acting as the subject will match a third person *plural* verb. We use the term **agreement** to refer to this matching of grammatical properties.

Consider these examples. In his account of Theseus' adventures, Hyginus says that Theseus came to Crete:

Theseus uenit

The dictionary form for Theseus' name in Latin is "*Theseus, Thesei, m.*," so *Theseus* is nominative, singular, and masculine. *uenit*, "he came," is perfect, active and indicative; since it is in the third person singular, it *agrees* with the subject *Theseus*.

In the story of the seven heroes who fought against Thebes, Hyginus says, "The seven leaders were going there" (in order to fight),

Septem ductores ibant

ductor, ductōris, m., means "leader, commander. The form *ductores* is masculine, nominative and plural. (We'll see the plural forms of the nominative case below.) *ibant* is in from the irregular verb *eō*, "to go." It is imperfect indicative active. Even in the irregular form, you can recognize that the ending is third person plural, so it agrees with the plural subject *ductores*.

29.13 Nouns in the nominative and genitive

Creating noun forms is similar to creating finite verb forms: (1) you find the stem from the dictionary entry, and (2) add the proper ending. For finite verbs, you had to choose the appropriate principal part of the verb to find its stem. For nouns, you use the genitive singular form (the second word in a dictionary entry), and drop the genitive ending.

29.13.1 TBA: add tables of ending, and worked examples from vocab list

29.14 Adjectives in the nominative and genitive

- introduce adjectives as part of speech
- introduce noun-adjective agreement
- introduce formation of adjectives, and forms of the nominative and genitive

29.15 Demonstrative pronouns in the nominative and genitive

- introduce demonstratives as example or pronouns (new part of speech)
- introduce pronominal use
- introduce formation of adjectives, and forms of the nominative and genitive
- introduce adjectival use

29.16 The personal agent of passive verbs

- introduce the **ablative** case
- forms in 3 declensions of nouns, in adjectives, and in the demonstrative

29.16.1 Means or instrument with active and passive verbs

- pure ablative

29.17 Direct and indirect objects

In addition to functioning as the **subject** of a verb, nouns can act as the **direct object** of the verb, or as the **indirect object** of the verb. In order for a verb to take an object, it must be a **transitive** verb, a verb that expresses an action that acts upon a recipient.

29.17.1 Direct object: function of the accusative case

The noun that receives the action of a verb in the active or middle voice is called the *direct object*. In Latin, the **accusative** case is the normal way to express this role in a clause: the accusative case is enough to show that the verb's action is done to it.

Hercules killed *the eagle* (that was torturing Prometheus).

The eagle is what is being killed, so in Latin it goes into the accusative case: *aquilam* Hercules interfecit

29.17.2 Indirect object: function of the dative case

Some verbs may express actions that also involve a secondary recipient, a person or thing that is affected by or benefits from the action: that noun is acting as the **indirect object**.

One verb that makes it easy to see the role of the indirect object, in both English and Latin, is the verb “to give.” (Latin grammarians in antiquity thought so, too: we have borrowed our term from the Latin *dativus casus*, “the case connected with giving.”) In English, we can express the indirect object either by word order or with a preposition such as “to.”

“Hercules gave him (Philoctetes) his divine arrows.” or “Hercules gave his divine arrows to him.”

In both sentences “arrows” is the direct object of the verb “gave”: the gifts are what is being directly affected by the action of the verb. The indirect object in both sentences is “him” (Philoctetes): as the recipient of the gifts, the action of giving affected Philoctetes in a secondary or indirect way. English expresses that by putting the indirect object before the direct object in the sentence, or with the preposition “to.”

Can you think of other verbs in English that frequently have both a direct and an indirect object expressed with this syntax?

In Latin, the indirect object is expressed with the dative case. Word order can be used for other kinds of emphasis.

Hercules suas sagittas diuinas *ei* donauit

29.18 Prepositions

29.19 Sentence Structures

Translating Latin sentences becomes much easier if you can recognize certain structural patterns that tell us what to expect in a sentence. Key to identifying what structural pattern a sentence follows is the **main verb**. The type of verb that appears in the sentence tells us what other grammatical items we need to fill out the rest of the sentence.

Below you will find a discussion of several very common sentence structures as well as guidelines for how to distinguish them by looking at the verb.

29.19.1 Intransitive Sentences

Intransitive sentences feature a subject and an **intransitive verb**. An intransitive verb is a verb that expresses an action or state of being, but does not act directly upon an object: for example, sneezing, dancing, running, raining, etc. As a result, an intransitive verb (and, thus, an intransitive sentence) does not take a direct object (on which, see Transitive Sentences below).

Below are some examples of intransitive sentences in Latin and English:

- Puella cucurrit. (“The girl ran.”)
- Timent. (“They are frightened.”)

NB: It might be tempting to think that a sentence like “The girl ran three miles” has a direct object. However, “three miles” is the shortened form of “for three miles”, an adverbial phrase that describes the word “ran.” We’ll learn more about phrases that express concepts of space and time in Module 3.

To summarize, intransitive sentences must have a:

- Subject
- Intransitive active verb

29.19.2 Transitive Sentences

Transitive sentences require a **direct object**, in addition to a subject and verb, to complete the meaning of the sentence.

For example, let’s consider the verb *facere* (“to make” in English). If I were to say *agricola fēcit* - “the farmer made”, the sentence would feel incomplete. You would be thinking, “What is he making? Pizza? Cake? A fence?”

Thus, we need to add a **direct object** to tell us what the farmer was making. In English, we would indicate this by putting what the farmer made immediately after the verb (e.g., “the farmer made pizza”). However, because Latin is an *inflected* language whose word order is highly variable, we can’t do this. Rather, Latin indicates that a noun is functioning as a direct object by putting it in the **accusative case**. Thus, the Latin version of the sentence looks like this:

Agricola *pizzam* fēcit.

Head to the noun paradigm charts and adjective paradigm charts to familiarize yourself with the **accusative** endings in the singular and plural of each declension and adjective grouping.

Below are some further examples of transitive sentences with accusative direct objects:

- Pater **filiam** amāvit (“The father loved his daughter.”)
- Fīlī **matrēs** amant. (“The sons love their mother.”)
- **Agricolam** uxor iuvābat. (“The wife was helping the farmer.”)
- Fortis vir **magnum monstrum et terribilem serpentem** pugnābat. (“The brave man is fighting the great monster and the terrible serpent.”)

Sometimes, you will want to specify the recipient of the action of the verb. For instance, in the sentence “the farmer gave the girl a pizza”, the girl receives the pizza that the farmer gives. Pizza is still the **direct object** - the farmer is giving the pizza (not the girl). In this sentence, the word “girl” is an **indirect object**, the recipient of

the action done by the main verb. In Latin, we signal the **indirect object** by using the **dative case**, which we usually translate as “to/for X”. So in Latin “the farmer gave the girl a pizza” looks like this:

- Agricola pizzam **puellae** dedit.

Literally, the sentence is “The farmer gave a pizza **to the girl**.”

Head to the noun paradigm charts and adjective paradigm charts to familiarize yourself with the **dative** endings in the singular and plural of each declension and adjective grouping.

To summarize, transitive sentences must have a:

- Subject
- Active verb
- Direct object in the accusative

And sometimes have an:

- Indirect object in the dative

29.19.3 Passive Sentences

Passive sentences feature a subject and, unsurprisingly, a **passive** verb. Because the subject of a passive verb is being acted upon, passive sentences do not feature a direct object. Below are some examples of simple passive sentences:

- Puella visa est. (“The girl was seen.”)
- Virī captī sunt. (“The men were captured.”)

Sometimes, passive sentences feature a construction known as the **ablative of agent** which tells us who performed the action of the main verb (since the subject is *receiving* the action of the verb, rather than performing it). We can recognize the **ablative of agent** by the preposition *ā/ab* followed by a noun in the **ablative case**. Below are the examples from above with an ablative of agent:

- Puella **ab matre** visa est. (“The girl was seen by her mother.”)
- Virī **ā fēminīs** captī sunt. (“The men were captured by the women.”)

Head to the noun paradigm charts and adjective paradigm charts to familiarize yourself with the **ablative** endings in the singular and plural of each declension and adjective grouping.

Passive sentences can also feature an **indirect object** in the **dative case** as well. For example, we might see a sentence like the following:

- Pizza **puellae** data est. (“The pizza was given to the girl.”)

To summarize, passive sentences must have a:

- Subject
- Passive verb

And sometimes have an:

- An ablative of agent
- Indirect object in the dative

29.19.4 Linking Sentences

Linking sentences, which we have already met, require a subject, **linking verb**, and **predicate nominative** which matches the subject in **number** and **case** and, in the case of adjectives as predicate nominatives, **gender**. The most common linking verb in English and Latin is “to be” (*sum, esse, fui, futurus*), though there are other linking verbs we will see throughout the semester. Below are some examples of linking sentences:

- Vir pater est. (“The man is a father.”)
- Puerī magnī et fortēs sunt. (“The boys are strong and brave.”)

In each of the sentences above, note which nominatives are the subjects (*vir, puerī*) and which nominatives are the predicate nominatives (*pater, magnī [et] fortēs*).

To summarize, linking sentences must have a:

- Subject
- Linking verb *-Predicate nominative

29.19.5 Tips for Determining Sentence Structure

The most important thing to do when determining sentence structure is to look at the **main verb**. If the verb is passive, we know that the sentence structure is going to be **passive**; if the verb is a linking verb (i.e. a form of *sum*), then we know the sentence structure is going to be **linking**. It is more difficult to differentiate between transitive and intransitive verbs. While some Latin verbs are used only transitively (verbs like “to carry”) and or only intransitively (verbs like “to rain”), a large number of verbs can be used both transitively or intransitively. In these cases, you will want to see if there is a direct object in the accusative case (transitive) or not (intransitive).

30 Richer sentences

In Unit 1, we learned how verbs and nouns conjugate and decline to create meaning and structure in Latin sentences. In Unit 2, we will continue to practice these skills in the context of more complicated syntax, with a particular focus on the different ways that Latin expresses time and place.

We will begin by learning about prepositional phrases and how they can add meaning to Latin verbal expressions. We will build directly on this by looking how Latin uses these and other constructions to express place and time

We will then move on to look at how we can convey different time relations through verbal tense. We will learn about the present and the future tense. After learning these tenses, we will have gained experience working with all four principal parts of a Latin verb!

30.1 Unit Objectives

By the end of this unit, you will be able to:

- Identify expressions of time using the accusative and ablative case
- Identify all persons of the present, future, imperfect, and perfect indicative in both active and passive voices
- Use principal parts to form present, future, imperfect and perfect forms of verbs
- Read more complex Latin sentences

31 Subordination

In Units 1 and 2, we learned how verbs and nouns conjugate and decline to create meaning and structure in Latin sentences, as well as how to express ideas like time and place using prepositional phrases. In Unit 3, we will build on this foundation and begin to read more complex sentences.

We will begin this unit with a consideration of subordination in Latin. We will learn about dependent clauses, focusing in particular on temporal clauses. In our discussion of dependent clauses, we will meet the subjunctive mood for the first time and learn how to form its imperfect and pluperfect tense. In doing so, we will begin to discuss what the subjunctive mood signifies in Latin, a conversation that we will continue for much of the next two semesters.

We will then move on to consider the place of the infinitive in Latin syntax. We will learn the present and perfect forms of the infinitive and discuss three usages of the infinitive: 1) as the subject of a Latin sentence; 2) as a word that complete the meaning of certain verbs; 3) as the main verb in an indirect statement (paraphrases but not quotations of what someone else has said).

31.1 Unit Objectives

By the end of this unit, you will be able to:

- Explain the difference between a dependent and independent clauses
- Identify temporal clauses
- Recognize and form the imperfect and pluperfect tenses of the subjunctive
- Recognize and form different tenses of *possum*
- Recognize and form different tense-voice combinations of the infinitive
- Identify different uses of the infinitive
- Recognize and formulate an indirect statement in Latin

32 Further subordination

In Unit 1 and 2, we learned how verbs and nouns conjugate and decline to create meaning and structure in Latin sentences, as well as how to express ideas like time and place using prepositional phrases and we built on this foundation and begin to read more complex sentences (cum clauses and indirect statements) in Unit 3. Unit 4 will introduce you to some new verbal forms that appear commonly in the Latin language.

We will start by learning the conjugation of several very common irregular verbs including sum, possum, volo, nolo, eo, and fero. This will not only help us to recognize these verbs when they show up in Latin texts, but also provide an opportunity to review the fundamentals of verb formation. We will also learn about deponent and semi-deponent verbs, a special class of verbs that are passive in form but active in meaning. In addition to learning these new forms, we will also learn two more tenses of the subjunctive, the present and perfect.

We will make use of these verbal forms as continue to practice translating complex sentences. We will continue to focus on translating indirect statements as well as temporal clauses with and without the subjunctive.

32.1 Unit Objectives

By the end of this unit, you will be able to:

Recognize and form a number of very common irregular verbs (sum, possum, volo, nolo, eo, and fero) Recognize and form deponent and semi-deponent verbs Recognize and form the present and perfect tenses of the subjunctive Recognize and translate temporal clauses Recognize and translate indirect statements

33 Some less frequent forms

We will begin unit 5 by going over the declension of nouns and adjectives from the first three declensions as well as the pronouns that we learned last semester. We will then move on to a full scale review of the Latin verbal forms that we met last semester. As we review these forms, we will also practice and review different grammatical structures that we saw last semester.

In addition to a review of old forms, we will meet some new ones to fill out our knowledge of Latin morphology. In terms of substantive forms, we will learn the fourth and fifth declension, two relatively obscure declensions that have some important members. We will also learn some verbal forms as well, including the first and second-person and the pluperfect indicative.

33.1 Objectives

By the end of Unit 5, you will be able to:

- Recognize and produce all substantive inflection patterns and analyze their grammatical function in sentences
- Recognize and produce (almost) all verbal inflection patterns and analyze their grammatical function in sentences
- Feel confident about the different grammatical structures that we met last semester

34 Relative clauses, participles, and gerunds

In Unit 1, we spent some time reviewing key concepts from last semester. In Unit 2, we will learn about different ways in which nouns, adjectives, and pronouns can be used to add further color to a Latin sentence.

We will begin by learning about relative clauses, a type of dependent clause that provides further information about a previous noun. We will then move on to learn about participles, a type of verbal adjective, that provides more information about the actions and behaviors of a noun within a sentence. We will conclude by looking at gerunds (verbal nouns) and gerundives (verbal adjectives) and the different constructions that they belong to.

Objectives

By the end of Unit 2, you will be able to:

Recognize relative clauses and analyze their grammatical function in sentences Recognize participles and understand how they add complexity to sentences Recognize gerunds and gerundives and identify the way that they are being used in sentences

35 Dependent clauses with the subjunctive

TBA

36 Reference

37 Regular Verbs - Paradigms

- TOC {;toc}

Paradigm Verbs:

- 1st Conjugation: *amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus* - to love
 - 2nd Conjugation: *moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus* - to warn, advise
 - 3rd Conjugation: *regō, regere, rexī, rectus* - to rule
 - 3rd -iō Conjugation: *capiō, capere, cēpī, captus* - to take, seize
 - 4th Conjugation: *audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus* - to hear
-

37.1 Indicative - Active

37.1.1 Present Active Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amō	moneō	regō	capiō	audiō
2nd sg.	amās	monēs	regis	capis	audīs
3rd sg.	amat	monet	regit	capit	audit
1st pl.	amāmus	monēmus	regimus	capimus	audīmus
2nd pl.	amātis	monētis	regitis	capitis	audītis
3rd pl.	amant	monent	regunt	capiunt	audiunt

37.1.2 Imperfect Active Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amābam	monēbam	regēbam	capiēbam	audiēbam
2nd sg.	amābās	monēbās	regēbās	capiēbās	audiēbās
3rd sg.	amābat	monēbat	regēbat	capiēbat	audiēbat
1st pl.	amābāmus	monēbāmus	regēbāmus	capiēbāmus	audiēbāmus
2nd pl.	amābātis	monēbātis	regēbātis	capiēbātis	audiēbātis
3rd pl.	amābant	monēbant	regēbant	capiēbant	audiēbant

37.1.3 Future Active Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amābō	monēbō	regam	capiam	audiam
2nd sg.	amābis	monēbis	regēs	capiēs	audiēs
3rd sg.	amābit	monēbit	reget	capiet	audiet
1st pl.	amābimus	monēbimus	regēmus	capiēmus	audiēmus
2nd pl.	amābitis	monēbitis	regētis	capiētis	audiētis
3rd pl.	amābunt	monēbunt	regent	capient	audient

37.1.4 Perfect Active Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amāvī	monuī	rexī	cēpī	audīvī
2nd sg.	amāvistī	monuistī	rexisī	cēpistī	audivistī
3rd sg.	amāvit	monuit	rexit	cēpit	audivit
1st pl.	amāvimus	monuimus	reximus	cēpimus	audivimus
2nd pl.	amāvistis	monuistis	rexisis	cēpistis	audivistis
3rd pl.	amāvērunt	monuērunt	rexērunt	cēpērunt	audivērunt

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
3rd pl. alt.	amāvēre	monuēre	rexēre	cēpēre	audivēre

37.1.5 Pluperfect Active Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amāveram	monueram	rexeram	cēperam	audiveram
2nd sg.	amāverās	monuerās	rexerās	cēperās	audiverās
3rd sg.	amāverat	monuerat	rexerat	cēperat	audiverat
1st pl.	amāverāmus	monuerāmus	rexerāmus	cēperāmus	audiverāmus
2nd pl.	amāverātis	monuerātis	rexerātis	cēperātis	audiverātis
3rd pl.	amāverant	monuerant	rexerant	cēperant	audiverant

37.1.6 Future Perfect Active Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amāverō	monuerō	rexerō	cēperō	audiverō
2nd sg.	amāveris	monueris	rexeris	cēperis	audiveris
3rd sg.	amāverit	monuerit	rexerit	cēperit	audiverit
1st pl.	amāverimus	monuerimus	rexerimus	cēperimus	audiverimus
2nd pl.	amāveritis	monueritis	rexeritis	cēperitis	audiveritis
3rd pl.	amāverint	monuerint	rexerint	cēperint	audiverint

37.2 Indicative - Passive

37.2.1 Present Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amor	moneor	regor	capior	audior
2nd sg.	amāris	monēris	regeris	caperis	audīris
3rd sg.	amātur	monētur	regitur	capitur	audītur
1st pl.	amāmur	monēmur	regimur	capimur	audīmur
2nd pl.	amāminī	monēminī	regiminī	capiminī	audīminī
3rd pl.	amantur	monentur	reguntur	capiuntur	audiuntur

37.2.2 Imperfect Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amābar	monēbar	regēbar	capiēbar	audiēbar
2nd sg.	amābāris	monēbāris	regēbāris	capiēbāris	audiēbāris
3rd sg.	amābātur	monēbātur	regēbātur	capiēbātur	audiēbātur
1st pl.	amābāmur	monēbāmur	regēbāmur	capiēbāmur	audiēbāmur
2nd pl.	amābāminī	monēbāminī	regēbāminī	capiēbāminī	audiēbāminī
3rd pl.	amābantur	monēbantur	regēbantur	capiēbantur	audiēbantur

37.2.3 Future Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amābor	monēbor	regar	capiar	audiar
2nd sg.	amāberis	monēberis	regēris	capiēris	audiēris
3rd sg.	amābitur	monēbitur	regētur	capiētur	audiētur
1st pl.	amābimur	monēbimur	regēmur	capiēmur	audiēmur
2nd pl.	amābiminī	monēbiminī	regēminī	capiēminī	audiēminī
3rd pl.	amābuntur	monēbuntur	regentur	capientur	audientur

37.2.4 Perfect Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amātus, -a, -um sum	monitus, -a, -um sum	rectus, -a, -um sum	captus, -a, -um sum	auditus, -a, -um sum
2nd sg.	amātus, -a, -um es	monitus, -a, -um es	rectus, -a, -um es	captus, -a, -um es	auditus, -a, -um es
3rd sg.	amātus, -a, -um est	monitus, -a, -um est	rectus, -a, -um est	captus, -a, -um est	auditus, -a, -um est
1st pl.	amātī, -ae, -a sumus	monitī, -ae, -a sumus	rectī, -ae, -a sumus	captī, -ae, -a sumus	audītī, -ae, -a sumus
2nd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a estis	monitī, -ae, -a estis	rectī, -ae, -a estis	captī, -ae, -a estis	audītī, -ae, -a estis
3rd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a sunt	monitī, -ae, -a sunt	rectī, -ae, -a sunt	captī, -ae, -a sunt	audītī, -ae, -a sunt

37.2.5 Pluperfect Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amātus, -a, -um eram	monitus, -a, -um eram	rectus, -a, -um eram	captus, -a, -um eram	auditus, -a, -um eram
2nd sg.	amātus, -a, -um erās	monitus, -a, -um erās	rectus, -a, -um erās	captus, -a, -um erās	auditus, -a, -um erās
3rd sg.	amātus, -a, -um erat	monitus, -a, -um erat	rectus, -a, -um erat	captus, -a, -um erat	auditus, -a, -um erat
1st pl.	amātī, -ae, -a erāmus	monitī, -ae, -a erāmus	rectī, -ae, -a erāmus	captī, -ae, -a erāmus	audītī, -ae, -a erāmus
2nd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a erātis	monitī, -ae, -a erātis	rectī, -ae, -a erātis	captī, -ae, -a erātis	audītī, -ae, -a erātis
3rd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a erant	monitī, -ae, -a erant	rectī, -ae, -a erant	captī, -ae, -a erant	audītī, -ae, -a erant

37.2.6 Future Perfect Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amātus, -a, -um erō	monitus, -a, -um erō	rectus, -a, -um erō	captus, -a, -um erō	auditus, -a, -um erō
2nd sg.	amātus, -a, -um eris	monitus, -a, -um eris	rectus, -a, -um eris	captus, -a, -um eris	auditus, -a, -um eris
3rd sg.	amātus, -a, -um erit	monitus, -a, -um erit	rectus, -a, -um erit	captus, -a, -um erit	auditus, -a, -um erit
1st pl.	amātī, -ae, -a erimus	monitī, -ae, -a erimus	rectī, -ae, -a erimus	captī, -ae, -a erimus	audītī, -ae, -a erimus
2nd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a eritis	monitī, -ae, -a eritis	rectī, -ae, -a eritis	captī, -ae, -a eritis	audītī, -ae, -a eritis
3rd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a erunt	monitī, -ae, -a erunt	rectī, -ae, -a erunt	captī, -ae, -a erunt	audītī, -ae, -a erunt

37.3 Subjunctive - Active

37.3.1 Present Active Subjunctive

Stem vowel changes are included in the bolded endings.

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amem	moneam	regam	capiam	audiam
2nd sg.	amēs	moneās	regās	capiās	audiās
3rd sg.	amet	moneat	regat	capiat	audiat
1st pl.	amēmus	moneāmus	regāmus	capiāmus	audiāmus
2nd pl.	amētis	moneātis	regātis	capiātis	audiātis
3rd pl.	ament	moneant	regant	capiant	audiant

37.3.2 Imperfect Active Subjunctive

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amārem	monērem	regerem	caperem	audīrem
2nd sg.	amārēs	monērēs	regerēs	caperēs	audīrēs
3rd sg.	amāret	monēret	regeret	caperet	audīret
1st pl.	amārēmus	monērēmus	regerēmus	caperēmus	audīrēmus
2nd pl.	amārētis	monērētis	regerētis	caperētis	audīrētis
3rd pl.	amārent	monērent	regerent	caperent	audīrent

37.3.3 Perfect Active Subjunctive

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amāverim	monuerim	rexerim	cēperim	audīverim
2nd sg.	amāverīs	monuerīs	rexerīs	cēperīs	audīverīs
3rd sg.	amāverit	monuerit	rexerit	cēperit	audīverit
1st pl.	amāverīmus	monuerīmus	rexerīmus	cēperīmus	audīverīmus
2nd pl.	amāverītis	monuerītis	rexerītis	cēperītis	audīverītis
3rd pl.	amāverint	monuerint	rexerint	cēperint	audīverint

37.3.4 Pluperfect Active Subjunctive

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amāvissem	monuisssem	rexissem	cēpisssem	audīvissem
2nd sg.	amāvissēs	monuissēs	rexissēs	cēpissēs	audīvissēs
3rd sg.	amāvisset	monuisset	rexisset	cēpisset	audīvisset
1st pl.	amāvissēmus	monuissēmus	rexissēmus	cēpissēmus	audīvissēmus
2nd pl.	amāvissētis	monuissētis	rexissētis	cēpissētis	audīvissētis

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
3rd pl.	amāvissent	monuissent	rexissent	cēpissent	audīvissent

37.4 Subjunctive - Passive

37.4.1 Present Passive Subjunctive

Stem vowel changes are included in the bolded endings.

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amer	monear	regar	capiar	audiar
2nd sg.	amēris	moneāris	regāris	capiāris	audiāris
3rd sg.	amētur	moneātur	regātur	capiātur	audiātur
1st pl.	amēmur	moneāmur	regāmur	capiāmur	audiāmur
2nd pl.	amēmini	moneāmini	regāmini	capiāmini	audiāmini
3rd pl.	amentur	moneantur	regantur	capiantur	audiantur

37.4.2 Imperfect Passive Subjunctive

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amārer	monērer	regerer	caperer	audīrer
2nd sg.	amārēris	monērē*ris**	regerēris	caperēris	audīrēris
3rd sg.	amārētur	monērētur	regerētur	caperētur	audīrētur
1st pl.	amārēmur	monērēmur	regerēmur	caperēmur	audīrēmur
2nd pl.	amārēmini	monērēmini	regerēmini	caperēmini	audīrēmini
3rd pl.	amārentur	monērentur	regerentur	caperentur	audīrentur

37.4.3 Perfect Passive Subjunctive

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amātus, -a, -um sim	monitus, -a, -um sim	rectus, -a, -um sim	captus, -a, -um sim	auditus, -a, -um sim
2nd sg.	amātus, -a, -um sīs	monitus, -a, -um sīs	rectus, -a, -um sīs	captus, -a, -um sīs	auditus, -a, -um sīs
3rd sg.	amātus, -a, -um sit	monitus, -a, -um sit	rectus, -a, -um sit	captus, -a, -um sit	auditus, -a, -um sit
1st pl.	amātī, -ae, -a sīmus	monitī, -ae, -a sīmus	rectī, -ae, -a sīmus	captī, -ae, -a sīmus	audītī, -ae, -a sīmus
2nd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a sītis	monitī, -ae, -a sītis	rectī, -ae, -a sītis	captī, -ae, -a sītis	audītī, -ae, -a sītis
3rd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a sint	monitī, -ae, -a sint	rectī, -ae, -a sint	captī, -ae, -a sint	audītī, -ae, -a sint

37.4.4 Pluperfect Passive Subjunctive

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amātus, -a, -um essem	monitus, -a, -um essem	rectus, -a, -um essem	captus, -a, -um essem	auditus, -a, -um essem
2nd sg.	amātus, -a, -um essēs	monitus, -a, -um essēs	rectus, -a, -um essēs	captus, -a, -um essēs	auditus, -a, -um essēs
3rd sg.	amātus, -a, -um esset	monitus, -a, -um esset	rectus, -a, -um esset	captus, -a, -um esset	auditus, -a, -um esset
1st pl.	amātī, -ae, -a essēmus	monitī, -ae, -a essēmus	rectī, -ae, -a essēmus	captī, -ae, -a essēmus	audītī, -ae, -a essēmus
2nd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a essētis	monitī, -ae, -a essētis	rectī, -ae, -a essētis	captī, -ae, -a essētis	audītī, -ae, -a essētis
3rd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a essent	monitī, -ae, -a essent	rectī, -ae, -a essent	captī, -ae, -a essent	audītī, -ae, -a essent

37.5 Infinitives

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
Pres. Act.	amāre	monēre	regere	capere	audire
Pres. Pass.	amārī	monērī	regī	capī	audīrī
Perf. Act.	amāvisse	monuisse	rexisse	cēpisse	audīvisse
Perf. Pass.	amātus esse	monitus esse	rectus esse	captus esse	audītus esse
Fut. Act.	amātūrus esse	monitūrus esse	rectūrus esse	captūrus esse	audītūrus esse
Fut. Pass.	amātum irī	monitum irī	rectum irī	captum irī	audītum irī

37.6 Gerunds and Gerundives

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
Gerund	amandum	monendum	regendum	capiendum	audiendum
Gerundive	amandus, -a, -um	monendus, -a, -um	regendus, -a, -um	capiendus, -a, -um	audiendus, -a, -um

38 Deponent Verbs - Paradigms

- TOC {;toc}

Paradigm Verbs:

- 1st Conjugation: *hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum* - to exhort, encourage
 - 2nd Conjugation: *vereor, verērī, veritus sum* - to fear
 - 3rd Conjugation: *loquor, loquī, locutus sum* - to speak
 - 3rd -iō Conjugation: *morior, morī, mortuus sum* - to die
 - 4th Conjugation: *potior, potīrī, potītus sum* - to gain possession of
-

38.1 Indicative - Passive (Deponent)

38.1.1 Present Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	hortor	vereor	loquor	morior	potior
2nd sg.	hortāris	verēris	loqueris	moreris	potīris
3rd sg.	hortātur	verētur	loquitur	moritur	potītur
1st pl.	hortāmur	verēmur	loquimur	morimur	potīmur
2nd pl.	hortāminī	verēminī	loquiminī	moriminī	potīminī
3rd pl.	hortantur	verentur	loquuntur	moriuntur	potiuntur

38.1.2 Imperfect Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	hortābar	verēbar	loquēbar	moriēbar	potiēbar
2nd sg.	hortābāris	verēbāris	loquēbāris	moriēbāris	potiēbāris
3rd sg.	hortābātur	verēbātur	loquēbātur	moriēbātur	potiēbātur
1st pl.	hortābāmur	verēbāmur	loquēbāmur	moriēbāmur	potiēbāmur
2nd pl.	hortābāminī	verēbāminī	loquēbāminī	moriēbāminī	potiēbāminī
3rd pl.	hortābantur	verēbantur	loquēbantur	moriēbantur	potiēbantur

38.1.3 Future Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	hortābor	verēbor	loquar	moriar	potiar
2nd sg.	hortāberis	verēberis	loquēris	moriēris	potiēris
3rd sg.	hortābitur	verēbitur	loquētur	moriētur	potiētur
1st pl.	hortābimur	verēbimur	loquēmur	moriēmur	potiēmur
2nd pl.	hortābiminī	verēbiminī	loquēminī	moriēminī	potiēminī
3rd pl.	hortābuntur	verēbuntur	loquentur	morientur	potientur

38.1.4 Perfect Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	hortātus, -a, -um sum	veritus, -a, -um sum	locutus, -a, -um sum	mortuus, -a, -um sum	potītus, -a, -um sum
2nd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um es	veritus, -a, -um es	locutus, -a, -um es	mortuus, -a, -um es	potītus, -a, -um es
3rd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um est	veritus, -a, -um est	locutus, -a, -um est	mortuus, -a, -um est	potītus, -a, -um est

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a sumus	veritī, -ae, -a sumus	locutī, -ae, -a sumus	mortuī, -ae, -a sumus	potītī, -ae, -a sumus
2nd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a estis	veritī, -ae, -a estis	locutī, -ae, -a estis	mortuī, -ae, -a estis	potītī, -ae, -a estis
3rd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a sunt	veritī, -ae, -a sunt	locutī, -ae, -a sunt	mortuī, -ae, -a sunt	potītī, -ae, -a sunt

38.1.5 Pluperfect Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	hortātus, -a, -um eram	veritus, -a, -um eram	locutus, -a, -um eram	mortuus, -a, -um eram	potītus, -a, -um eram
2nd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um erās	veritus, -a, -um erās	locutus, -a, -um erās	mortuus, -a, -um erās	potītus, -a, -um erās
3rd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um erat	veritus, -a, -um erat	locutus, -a, -um erat	mortuus, -a, -um erat	potītus, -a, -um erat
1st pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a erāmus	veritī, -ae, -a erāmus	locutī, -ae, -a erāmus	mortuī, -ae, -a erāmus	potītī, -ae, -a erāmus
2nd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a erātis	veritī, -ae, -a erātis	locutī, -ae, -a erātis	mortuī, -ae, -a erātis	potītī, -ae, -a erātis
3rd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a erant	veritī, -ae, -a erant	locutī, -ae, -a erant	mortuī, -ae, -a erant	potītī, -ae, -a erant

38.1.6 Future Perfect Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	hortātus, -a, -um erō	veritus, -a, -um erō	locutus, -a, -um erō	mortuus, -a, -um erō	potītus, -a, -um erō
2nd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um eris	veritus, -a, -um eris	locutus, -a, -um eris	mortuus, -a, -um eris	potītus, -a, -um eris

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
3rd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um erit	veritus, -a, -um erit	locutus, -a, -um erit	mortuus, -a, -um erit	potītus, -a, -um erit
1st pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a erimus	veritī, -ae, -a erimus	locutī, -ae, -a erimus	mortuī, -ae, -a erimus	potītī, -ae, -a erimus
2nd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a eritis	veritī, -ae, -a eritis	locutī, -ae, -a eritis	mortuī, -ae, -a eritis	potītī, -ae, -a eritis
3rd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a erunt	veritī, -ae, -a erunt	locutī, -ae, -a erunt	mortuī, -ae, -a erunt	potītī, -ae, -a erunt

38.2 Subjunctive - Passive (Deponent)

38.2.1 Present Passive Subjunctive

Stem vowel changes are included in the bolded endings.

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	horter	verear	loquar	moriar	potiar
2nd sg.	hortēris	verēāris	loquāris	moriāris	potiāris
3rd sg.	hortētur	verēātur	loquātur	moriātur	potiātur
1st pl.	hortēmur	verēāmur	loquāmur	moriāmur	potiāmur
2nd pl.	hortēminī	verēāminī	loquāminī	moriāminī	potiāminī
3rd pl.	hortentur	verēantur	loquantur	morianur	potiantur

38.2.2 Imperfect Passive Subjunctive

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	hortārer	verērer	loquerer	morerer	potīrer

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
2nd sg.	hortārēris	verērēris	loquerēris	morerēris	potirēris
3rd sg.	hortārētur	verērētur	loquerētur	morerētur	potirētur
1st pl.	hortārēmur	verērēmur	loquerēmur	morerēmur	potirēmur
2nd pl.	hortārēmini	verērēmini	loquerēmini	morerēmini	potirēmini
3rd pl.	hortārentur	verērentur	loquerentur	morerentur	potirentur

38.2.3 Perfect Passive Subjunctive

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	hortātus, -a, -um sim	veritus, -a, -um sim	locutus, -a, -um sim	mortuus, -a, -um sim	potītus, -a, -um sim
2nd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um sis	veritus, -a, -um sis	locutus, -a, -um sis	mortuus, -a, -um sis	potītus, -a, -um sis
3rd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um sit	veritus, -a, -um sit	locutus, -a, -um sit	mortuus, -a, -um sit	potītus, -a, -um sit
1st pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a sīmus	veritī, -ae, -a sīmus	locutī, -ae, -a sīmus	mortuī, -ae, -a sīmus	potītī, -ae, -a sīmus
2nd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a sītis	veritī, -ae, -a sītis	locutī, -ae, -a sītis	mortuī, -ae, -a sītis	potītī, -ae, -a sītis
3rd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a sint	veritī, -ae, -a sint	locutī, -ae, -a sint	mortuī, -ae, -a sint	potītī, -ae, -a sint

38.2.4 Pluperfect Passive Subjunctive

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	hortātus, -a, -um essem	veritus, -a, -um essem	locutus, -a, -um essem	mortuus, -a, -um essem	potītus, -a, -um essem
2nd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um essēs	veritus, -a, -um essēs	locutus, -a, -um essēs	mortuus, -a, -um essēs	potītus, -a, -um essēs

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
3rd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um esset	veritus, -a, -um esset	locutus, -a, -um esset	mortuus, -a, -um esset	potītus, -a, -um esset
1st pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a essēmus	veritī, -ae, -a essēmus	locutī, -ae, -a essēmus	mortuī, -ae, -a essēmus	potītī, -ae, -a essēmus
2nd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a essētis	veritī, -ae, -a essētis	locutī, -ae, -a essētis	mortuī, -ae, -a essētis	potītī, -ae, -a essētis
3rd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a essent	veritī, -ae, -a essent	locutī, -ae, -a essent	mortuī, -ae, -a essent	potītī, -ae, -a essent

38.3 Infinitives

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
Pres. Pass.	hortārī	verērī	loquī	morī	potīrī
Perf. Pass.	hortātus esse	veritus esse	locutus esse	mortuus esse	potītus esse
Fut. Act.	hortātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	locutūrus esse	mortuūrus esse	potītūrus esse

38.4 Gerunds and Gerundives

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
Gerund	hortandum	verendum	loquendum	moriendum	potiendum
Gerundive	hortandus, -a, -um	verendus, -a, -um	loquendus, -a, -um	moriendus, -a, -um	potiendus, -a, -um

39 Nouns - Paradigms

· TOC {;toc}

39.1 First Declension

39.1.1 *puella, puellae*, f. - girl

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	puella	puellae
Genitive	puellae	puellārum
Dative	puellae	puellis
Accusative	puellam	puellās
Ablative	puellā	puellis

39.2 Second Declension Masculine

39.2.1 *maritus, maritī*, m. - husband

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	maritus	maritī
Genitive	maritī	maritōrum

Case	Singular	Plural
Dative	maritō	maritīs
Accusative	maritum	maritōs
Ablative	maritō	maritīs

39.2.2 *ager, agrī*, m. - field

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	ager	agrī
Genitive	agrī	agrōrum
Dative	agrō	agrīs
Accusative	agrum	agrōs
Ablative	agrō	agrīs

39.3 Second Declension Neuter

39.3.1 *exemplum, exemplī*, n. - example

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	exemplum	exempla
Genitive	exemplī	exemplōrum
Dative	exemplō	exemplīs
Accusative	exemplum	exempla
Ablative	exemplō	exemplīs

39.4 Third Declension Masculine/Feminine

39.4.1 *mater, matris*, f. - mother

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	<i>māter</i> *	<i>mātrēs</i>
Genitive	<i>mātris</i>	<i>mātrum</i>
Dative	<i>mātrī</i>	<i>mātribus</i>
Accusative	<i>mātre</i> m	<i>mātrēs</i>
Ablative	<i>mātre</i>	<i>mātribus</i>

* Nominative forms of third declension nouns are highly variable; there is no one set or common ending.

39.5 Third Declension Masculine/Feminine i-stem

39.5.1 *urbs, urbis*, f. - city

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	<i>urbs</i> *	<i>urbēs</i>
Genitive	<i>urbis</i>	<i>urbium</i> **
Dative	<i>urbī</i>	<i>urbibus</i>
Accusative	<i>urbem</i>	<i>urbēs</i>
Ablative	<i>urbe</i>	<i>urbibus</i>

* Nominative forms of third declension nouns are highly variable; there is no one set or common ending. ** Note the extra i in the genitive plural ending: *-ium*, rather than simply *-um*.

39.6 Third Declension Neuter

39.6.1 *nōmen, nōminis*, n. - name

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	nōmen*	nōmina
Genitive	nōminis	nōminum
Dative	nōminī	nōminibus
Accusative	nōmen**	nōmina**
Ablative	nōmine	nōminibus

* Nominative forms of third declension nouns are highly variable; there is no one set or common ending. ** The accusative forms of all **neuter** nouns, adjectives, and pronouns exactly match their nominative counterparts within the same number (e.g., neuter accusative singular = neuter nominative singular).

39.7 Third Declension Neuter i-stem

39.7.1 *mare, maris*, n. - sea

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	mare*	maria***
Genitive	maris	marium***
Dative	marī	maribus
Accusative	mare**	maria***
Ablative	marī***	maribus

* Nominative forms of third declension nouns are highly variable; there is no one set or common ending. ** The accusative forms of all **neuter** nouns, adjectives, and pronouns exactly match their nominative counterparts within the same number (e.g., neuter accusative singular = neuter nominative singular). *** Note the replacement of the normal ablative singular ending -e with -ī and the extra i in the endings of the nominative, genitive, and accusative plurals.

39.8 Fourth Declension Masculine/Feminine

39.8.1 *manus, manūs, f.* - hand

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	<i>manus</i>	<i>manūs</i>
Genitive	<i>manūs</i>	<i>manuum</i>
Dative	<i>manūi</i>	<i>manibus</i>
Accusative	<i>manum</i>	<i>manūs</i>
Ablative	<i>manū</i>	<i>manibus</i>

39.9 Fourth Declension Neuter

39.9.1 *genū, genūs, n.* - knee

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	<i>genū</i>	<i>genua</i>
Genitive	<i>genūs</i>	<i>genuum</i>
Dative	<i>genū</i>	<i>genibus</i>
Accusative	<i>genū</i>	<i>genua</i>
Ablative	<i>genū</i>	<i>genibus</i>

39.10 Fifth Declension Masculine/Feminine

39.10.1 *rēs, reī*, f. - thing, matter, situation, affair

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	<i>rēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>
Genitive	<i>reī</i>	<i>rērum</i>
Dative	<i>reī</i>	<i>rēbus</i>
Accusative	<i>rem</i>	<i>rēs</i>
Ablative	<i>rē</i>	<i>rēbus</i>

39.10.2 *diēs, diēī*, m. - day

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	<i>diēs</i>	<i>diēs</i>
Genitive	<i>diēī</i>	<i>diērum</i>
Dative	<i>diēī</i>	<i>diēbus</i>
Accusative	<i>diem</i>	<i>diēs</i>
Ablative	<i>diē</i>	<i>diēbus</i>

40 Adjectives - Paradigms

· TOC {;toc}

40.1 2-1-2 adjectives

40.1.1 *bonus, bona, bonum* - good

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	bonus	bona	bonum
Genitive	bonī	bonae	bonī
Dative	bonō	bonae	bonō
Accusative	bonum	bonam	bonum
Ablative	bonō	bonā	bonō

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	bonī	bonae	bona
Genitive	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
Dative	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Accusative	bonōs	bonās	bona
Ablative	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

40.1.2 *pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum* - beautiful, handsome

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
Genitive	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī
Dative	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
Accusative	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum
Ablative	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
Genitive	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
Dative	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs
Accusative	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
Ablative	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs

40.2 2-1-2 - īus adjectives

40.2.1 *nullus, nulla, nullum* - no, none

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	nullus*	nulla	nullum**
Genitive	nullīus	nullīus	nullīus
Dative	nullī	nullī	nullī

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Accusative	nullum	nullam	nullum
Ablative	nullō	nullā	nullō

* Some masculine nominative singulars of -īus adjectives end in -r (e.g., *alter*, *altera*, *alterum*). ** Some neuter nominative singulars of -īus adjectives end in -d (e.g., *alius*, *alia*, *aliud*).

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	nullī	nullae	nulla
Genitive	nullōrum	nullārum	nullōrum
Dative	nullīs	nullīs	nullīs
Accusative	nullōs	nullās	nulla
Ablative	nullīs	nullīs	nullīs

40.3 Three-Termination Adjectives

40.3.1 *ācer*, *ācris*, *ācre* - keen, sharp

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	ācer	ācris	ācre
Genitive	ācris	ācris	ācris
Dative	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
Accusative	ācre m	ācre m	ācre
Ablative	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Genitive	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
Dative	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Accusative	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Ablative	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

40.4 Two-Termination Adjectives**40.4.1 *fortis, forte* - strong, brave****Singular**

Case	M./F.	Neuter
Nominative	fortis	forte
Genitive	fortis	fortis
Dative	fortī	fortī
Accusative	fortem	forte
Ablative	fortī	fortī

Plural

Case	M./F.	Neuter
Nominative	fortēs	fortia
Genitive	fortium	fortium
Dative	fortibus	fortibus
Accusative	fortēs	fortia

Case	M./F.	Neuter
Ablative	fortibus	fortibus

40.5 One-Termination Adjectives

40.5.1 *sapiēns, sapientis* - wise

Singular

Case	M./F.	Neuter
Nominative	sapiēns	sapiēns
Genitive	sapientis	sapientis
Dative	sapientī	sapientī
Accusative	sapientem	sapiēns*
Ablative	sapientī	sapientī

* The accusative forms of all **neuter** nouns, adjectives, and pronouns exactly match their nominative counterparts within the same number (e.g., neuter accusative singular = neuter nominative singular).

Plural

Case	M./F.	Neuter
Nominative	sapientēs	sapientia
Genitive	sapientium	sapientium
Dative	sapientibus	sapientibus
Accusative	sapientēs	sapientia
Ablative	sapientibus	sapientibus

40.6 Interrogative

40.6.1 *quī, quae, quod* - which? what?

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	quī	quae	quod
Genitive	cuius	cuius	cuius
Dative	cui	cui	cui
Accusative	quem	quam	quod
Ablative	quō	quā	quō

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	quī	quae	quae
Genitive	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dative	quibus	quibus	quibus
Accusative	quōs	quās	quae
Ablative	quibus	quibus	quibus

40.7 Declinable Numerals

40.7.1 *ūnus, -a, -um* - one

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	ūnus	ūna	ūnum
Genitive	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Dative	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī
Accusative	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum
Ablative	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō

40.7.2 *duo, duae, duo* - two

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	duo	duae	duo
Genitive	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
Dative	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
Accusative	duōs	duās	duo
Ablative	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

40.7.3 *trēs, tria* - three

Case	M./F.	Neuter
Nominative	trēs	tria
Genitive	trium	trium
Dative	tribus	tribus
Accusative	trēs	tria
Ablative	tribus	tribus

41 Irregular Verbs - Paradigms

- TOC {;toc}

Paradigm Verbs:

- sum, esse, fuī, futūrus - to be
 - eō, īre, īvī/īī, ītus - to go
 - ferō, ferre, tūlī, lātus - to bear, carry
 - volō, velle, voluī - to want, wish
 - nōlō, nolle, nolūī - not to want
 - mālō, malle, maluī - to prefer
-

41.1 Indicative - Active

41.1.1 Present Active Indicative

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
2nd sg.	es	īs	fers	vīs	nōn vīs	māvis
3rd sg.	est	it	fert	vult	nōn vult	māvult
1st pl.	sumus	īmus	ferimus	volumus	nolumus	mālumus
2nd pl.	estis	ītis	fertis	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
3rd pl.	sunt	eunt	ferunt	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt

41.1.2 Imperfect Active Indicative

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	eram	ibam	ferēbam	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
2nd sg.	erās	ibās	ferēbās	volēbās	nōlēbās	mālēbās
3rd sg.	erat	ibat	ferēbat	volēbat	nōlēbat	mālēbat
1st pl.	erāmus	ibāmus	ferēbāmus	volēbāmus	nōlēbāmus	mālēbāmus
2nd pl.	erātis	ibātis	ferēbātis	volēbātis	nōlēbātis	mālēbātis
3rd pl.	erant	ibant	ferēbant	volēbant	nōlēbant	mālēbant

41.1.3 Future Active Indicative

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	erō	ibō	feram	volam	nōlam	mālam
2nd sg.	eris	ibis	ferēs	volēs	nōlēs	mālēs
3rd sg.	erit	ibit	feret	volet	nōlet	mālet
1st pl.	erimus	ibimus	ferēmus	volēmus	nōlēmus	mālēmus
2nd pl.	eritis	ibitis	ferētis	volētis	nōlētis	mālētis
3rd pl.	erunt	ibunt	ferent	volent	nōlent	mālent

41.1.4 Perfect Active Indicative

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	fuī	ivī or iī	tulī	voluī	nōluī	māluī
2nd sg.	fuistī	istī	tulistī	voluistī	nōluistī	māluistī
3rd sg.	fuit	iit	tulit	voluit	nōluit	māluit
1st pl.	fuimus	iimus	tulimus	voluimus	nōluimus	māluimus
2nd pl.	fuistis	istis	tulistis	voluistis	nōluistis	māluistis
3rd pl.	fuērunt	iērunt	tulērunt	voluērunt	nōluērunt	māluērunt

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
3rd pl. alt.	fuēre	iēre	tulēre	voluēre	nōluēre	māluēre

41.1.5 Pluperfect Active Indicative

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	fueram	ieram	tuleram	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
2nd sg.	fuerās	ierās	tulerās	voluerās	nōluerās	māluerās
3rd sg.	fuerat	ierat	tulerat	voluerat	nōluerat	māluerat
1st pl.	fuerāmus	ierāmus	tulerāmus	voluerāmus	nōluerāmus	māluerāmus
2nd pl.	fuerātis	ierātis	tulerātis	voluerātis	nōluerātis	māluerātis
3rd pl.	fuerant	ierant	tulerant	voluerant	nōluerant	māluerant

41.1.6 Future Perfect Active Indicative

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	fuerō	ierō	tulerō	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō
2nd sg.	fueris	ieris	tuleris	volueris	nōlueris	mālueris
3rd sg.	fuerit	ierit	tulerit	voluerit	nōluerit	māluerit
1st pl.	fuerimus	ierimus	tulerimus	voluerimus	nōluerimus	māluerimus
2nd pl.	fueritis	ieritis	tuleritis	volueritis	nōlueritis	mālueritis
3rd pl.	fuerint	ierint	tulerint	voluerint	nōluerint	māluerint

41.2 Indicative - Passive (ferō)

41.2.1 Present Passive Indicative

	Singular	Plural
1st	feror	ferimur
2nd	ferris	ferimini
3rd	fertur	feruntur

41.2.2 Imperfect Passive Indicative

	Singular	Plural
1st	ferēbar	ferēbāmur
2nd	ferēbāris	ferēbāmini
3rd	ferēbātur	ferēbantur

41.2.3 Future Passive Indicative

	Singular	Plural
1st	ferar	ferēmur
2nd	ferēris	ferēmini
3rd	ferētur	ferentur

41.2.4 Perfect Passive Indicative

	Singular	Plural
1st	lātus, -a, -um sum	lātī, -ae, -a sumus
2nd	lātus, -a, -um es	lātī, -ae, -a estis
3rd	lātus, -a, -um est	lātī, -ae, -a sunt

41.2.5 Pluperfect Passive Indicative

	Singular	Plural
1st	lātus, -a, -um eram	lātī, -ae, -a erāmus
2nd	lātus, -a, -um erās	lātī, -ae, -a erātis
3rd	lātus, -a, -um erat	lātī, -ae, -a erant

41.2.6 Future Perfect Passive Indicative

	Singular	Plural
1st	lātus, -a, -um erō	lātī, -ae, -a erimus
2nd	lātus, -a, -um eris	lātī, -ae, -a eritis
3rd	lātus, -a, -um erit	lātī, -ae, -a erunt

41.3 Subjunctive - Active

41.3.1 Present Active Subjunctive

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	sim	eam	feram	velim	nōlim	mālim
2nd sg.	sīs	eās	ferās	velis	nōlis	mālis
3rd sg.	sit	eat	ferat	velit	nōlit	mālit
1st pl.	sīmus	eāmus	ferāmus	velīmus	nōlīmus	mālīmus
2nd pl.	sītis	eātis	ferātis	velītis	nōlītis	mālītis
3rd pl.	sint	eant	ferant	velint	nōlint	mālint

41.3.2 Imperfect Active Subjunctive

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	essem	īrem	ferrem	vellem	nōllem	māllem
2nd sg.	essēs	īrēs	ferrēs	vellēs	nōllēs	māllēs
3rd sg.	esset	īret	ferret	vellet	nōllet	māllet
1st pl.	essēmus	īrēmus	ferrēmus	vellēmus	nōllēmus	māllēmus
2nd pl.	essētis	īrētis	ferrētis	vellētis	nōllētis	māllētis
3rd pl.	essent	īrent	ferrent	vellent	nōllent	māllent

41.3.3 Perfect Active Subjunctive

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	fuerim	ierim	tulerim	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
2nd sg.	fuerīs	ierīs	tulerīs	voluerīs	nōluerīs	māluerīs
3rd sg.	fuerit	ierit	tulerit	voluerit	nōluerit	māluerit
1st pl.	fuerīmus	ierīmus	tulerīmus	voluerīmus	nōluerīmus	māluerīmus
2nd pl.	fuerītis	ierītis	tulerītis	voluerītis	nōluerītis	māluerītis
3rd pl.	fuerint	ierint	tulerint	voluerint	nōluerint	māluerint

41.3.4 Pluperfect Active Subjunctive

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	fuissem	īsem	tulissem	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem
2nd sg.	fuissēs	īssēs	tulissēs	voluissēs	nōluissēs	māluissēs
3rd sg.	fuisset	īset	tulisset	voluisset	nōluisset	māluisset
1st pl.	fuissēmus	īssēmus	tulissēmus	voluissēmus	nōluissēmus	māluissēmus
2nd pl.	fuissētis	īssētis	tulissētis	voluissētis	nōluissētis	māluissētis
3rd pl.	fuissent	īssent	tulissent	voluissent	nōluissent	māluissent

41.4 Subjunctive - Passive (ferō)

41.4.1 Present Passive Subjunctive

	Singular	Plural
1st	ferar	ferāmur
2nd	ferāris	ferāminī
3rd	ferātur	ferantur

41.4.2 Imperfect Passive Subjunctive

	Singular	Plural
1st	ferrer	ferrēmur
2nd	ferrēris	ferrēminī
3rd	ferrētur	ferrentur

41.4.3 Perfect Passive Subjunctive

	Singular	Plural
1st	lātus, -a, -um sim	lātī, -ae, -a sīmus
2nd	lātus, -a, -um sīs	lātī, -ae, -a sītis
3rd	lātus, -a, -um sit	lātī, -ae, -a sint

41.4.4 Pluperfect Passive Subjunctive

	Singular	Plural
1st	lātus, -a, -um essem	lātī, -ae, -a essēmus
2nd	lātus, -a, -um essēs	lātī, -ae, -a essētis
3rd	lātus, -a, -um esset	lātī, -ae, -a essent

41.5 Infinitives

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō
Pres. Act.	esse	īre	ferre	velle	nolle
Pres. Pass.			ferī		
Perf. Act.	fuisse	īsse	tulisse	voluisse	nōluisse
Perf. Pass.			lātus esse		
Fut. Act.	futūrus esse / fōre	itūrus esse	lātūrus esse		
Fut. Pass.			lātum īrī		

41.6 Gerunds and Gerundives

	eō	ferō
Gerund	eundum	ferendum
Gerundive	eundus, -a, -um	ferendus, -a, -um

42 Pronouns - Paradigms

· TOC {;toc}

42.1 Demonstratives

Note that demonstrative pronouns can also modify nouns and thus serve as demonstrative *adjectives*.

42.1.1 *hic, haec, hoc* - this, these

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	hic	haec	hoc
Genitive	huius	huius	huius
Dative	huic	huic	huic
Accusative	hunc	hanc	hoc
Ablative	hōc	hāc	hōc

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	hī	hae	haec
Genitive	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dative	hīs	hīs	hīs
Accusative	hōs	hās	haec

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Ablative	hīs	hīs	hīs

42.1.2 *ille, illa, illud* - that, those

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	ille	illa	illud
Genitive	illīus	illīus	illīus
Dative	illī	illī	illī
Accusative	illum	illam	illud
Ablative	illō	illā	illō

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	illī	illae	illa
Genitive	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dative	illīs	illīs	illīs
Accusative	illōs	illās	illa
Ablative	illīs	illīs	illīs

42.2 Intensives

Note that intensive pronouns can also modify nouns and thus serve as intensive *adjectives*.

42.2.1 *ipse, ipsa, ipsum* - the very ____, ____self

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	ipse	ipsa	ipsum
Genitive	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius
Dative	ipsi	ipsi	ipsi
Accusative	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
Ablative	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	ipsi	ipsae	ipsa
Genitive	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dative	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
Accusative	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Ablative	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis

42.3 Personal

42.3.1 *is, ea, id* - he, she, it, they (3rd person)

Note that the 3rd person personal pronoun can also modify nouns and thus serve as a demonstrative *adjective*; this demonstrative has a more general force and doesn't indicate distance from the speaker in the way that *hic* or *ille* do.

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	is	ea	id
Genitive	eius	eius	eius
Dative	eī	eī	eī
Accusative	eum	eam	id
Ablative	eō	eā	eō

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	eī / iī	eae	ea
Genitive	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dative	eīs	eīs	eīs
Accusative	eōs	eās	ea
Ablative	eīs	eīs	eīs

42.3.2 *ego* - I, me, we, us (1st person)

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	ego	nōs
Genitive	meī	nostrum / nostrī
Dative	mihi	nōbīs
Accusative	mē	nōs
Ablative	mē	nōbīs

42.3.3 *tū* - you, you all (2nd person)

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	tū	vōs
Genitive	tuī	vestrum / vestrī
Dative	tibi	vōbīs
Accusative	tē	vōs
Ablative	tē	vōbīs

42.4 Reflexive

42.4.1 1st person (myself, ourselves)

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	—	—
Genitive	meī	nostrum / nostrī
Dative	mihi	nōbīs
Accusative	mē	nōs
Ablative	mē	nōbīs

42.4.2 2nd person (yourself, yourselves)

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	—	—
Genitive	tuī	vestrum / vestrī
Dative	tibi	vōbīs
Accusative	tē	vōs
Ablative	tē	vōbīs

42.4.3 3rd person (himself, herself, itself, themselves)

Case	Sing./Pl.
Nominative	—
Genitive	suī
Dative	sibi
Accusative	sē
Ablative	sē

42.5 Interrogative

42.5.1 *quis, quid* - who? which? what?

Singular

Case	M/F	N
Nominative	quis	quid
Genitive	cuius	cuius
Dative	cui	cui
Accusative	quem	quid
Ablative	quō	quō

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	quī	quae	quae
Genitive	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dative	quibus	quibus	quibus
Accusative	quōs	quās	quae

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Ablative	quibus	quibus	quibus

42.6 Relative

42.6.1 *quī, quae, quod* - who, which, that

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	quī	quae	quod
Genitive	cuius	cuius	cuius
Dative	cui	cui	cui
Accusative	quem	quam	quod
Ablative	quō	quā	quō

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	quī	quae	quae
Genitive	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dative	quibus	quibus	quibus
Accusative	quōs	quās	quae
Ablative	quibus	quibus	quibus

43 Vocabulary lists

The lists linked below give dictionary forms and very brief definitions for ca. 250 of the most frequently occurring words in Hyginus' *Fabulae*. You can find very full entries with examples of usage in the searchable online version of Lewis and Short's *Latin Dictionary* (from Furman University).

These 250 terms represent roughly 2/3 of all the words in Hyginus' text!

The vocabulary lists use j and v for consonantal sounds, i and u for vocalic sounds. This is the same spelling convention that you will find in the Lewis-Short Dictionary. Remember that we often use texts with different spelling conventions (e.g., *i* for both consonantal and vocalic sounds), so that to find a vocabulary entry for a form like *iussit* (third singular perfect active indicative), you would look under j to find *jubeo*, *jubēre*, *jussi*, *jussus*.

44 Prepositions in Hyginus, *Fabulae*

- ab or a+ *abl*: away from
- ad + *acc*: towards
- apud + *acc*: at, with, by, near
- cum + *abl*: with
- de + *abl*: from, down from
- ex + *abl*: out of
- in + *abl*: in
- in + *acc*: into
- inter + *acc*: between, among
- ob + *acc*: on account of
- per + *acc*: through
- post + *acc*: after
- pro + *abl*: in front of, on behalf of
- propter + *acc*: on account of
- super + *acc*: above, on top of

45 Pronouns in Hyginus, *Fabulae*

- ego: *personal pronoun*, I
- hic, haec, hoc: *demonstrative pronoun*, this one
- ille, illa, illud: *demonstrative pronoun*, that one
- ipse: *intensifying pronoun*, **he** (himself), **she** herself
- is, ea, id: *demonstrative pronoun*, he, she, it
- qui, quae, quod: *relative pronoun*, who, which
- quis, quid: *interrogative pronoun*, who, what
- quisque: *indefinite pronoun*, whoever
- sui: *reflexive pronoun* himself, herself

46 Most frequent verbs in Hyginus, *Fabulae*

- accipio, accipere, accepi, acceptus: *to receive, to perceive*
- adduco, adducere, adduxi, adductus: *to lead or conduct*
- aio (*irregular, exists only in a few forms*): *to say, assert*
- amitto, amittere, amisi, amissus: *to dismiss, send away, to lose*
- amo, amare, amavi, amatus: *to love*
- appello, appellare, appelavi, appellatus: *to address, name*
- audio, audire, audivi, auditus: *to hear*
- cano, canere, cecini, cantus: *to sing*
- capio, capere, cepi, captus: *to seize*
- coepio, coepere, coepi, coeptus: *to begin*
- cognosco, cognoscere, cognovi, cognitus: *to know, become acquainted with*
- commuto, commutare, commutavi, commutatus: *to change, interchange*
- comprimo, comprimere, compressi, compressus: *to squeeze together, to repress*
- concumbo, concumbere, concubui, concubitus: *to sleep with*
- conicio (*or coicio, or conjicio*), conicere, conjeci, conjectus: *to cast, to connect, to discuss*
- constituo, constituere, constitui, constitutus: *to establish, prepare*
- consumo, consumere, consumpsi, consumptus: *to devour*
- contendo, contendere, contendi, contentus: *to extend, to exert, to strive with*
- converto, convertere, converti, conversus: *to turn, alter*
- cresco, crescere, crevi, cretus: *to be born, appear*
- dedo, dedere, dedidi, deditus: *to give away, give up, surrender*
- defero, deferre, detuli, delatus: *to carry away, convey*
- dico, dicere, dixi, dictus: *to say*
- do, dare, dedi, datus: *to give*
- duco, ducere, duxi, ductus: *to lead*
- eo, ire, ii or ivi, -: *to go*
- exeo, exire, exivi or exii, exitus: *to go out*
- expono, exponere, exposui, expositus: *to set forth, expose*
- facio, facere, feci, factus: *to make*
- fero, ferre, tuli, latus: *to bear, carry*

- fio, fiēri, -, factus: *to become, be produced*
- habeo, habēre, habui, habitus: *to have*
- immolo, immolare, immolavi, immolatus: *to sacrifice*
- impono, imponēre, imposui, impositus: *to set upon or over*
- intereo, interire, interii or iterivi, iteritus: *to perish, be ruined*
- interficio, interficēre, interfeci, interfectus: *destroy, kill*
- invenio, invenire, inveni, inventus: *to discover, find out*
- irascor, irasci, -, iratus: *to be angry, enraged*
- jubeo, jubēre, jussi, jussus: *to order, prescribe*
- jungo, jungēre, junxi, junctus: *to connect, join together*
- libero, liberare, liberavi, liberatus: *to free*
- libet, libēre, libuit, libitus (*impersonal*): *to be pleasing or agreeable*
- loco, locare, locavi, locatus: *to place, arrange*
- mitto, mittēre, misi, missus: *to send*
- moneo, monēre, monui, monitus: *to war*
- morior, mori, -, mortuus: *to die*
- nascor, nasci, -, natus: *to be born*
- neco, necare, necavi, necatus: *to slay*
- nego, negare, negavi, negatus: *to say no, refuse*
- nitor, niti, -, nissus or nixus: *to lean on, to strive for*
- nolo, nolle, nolui, -: *to wish...not, to be unwilling*
- nomino, nominare, nominavi, nominatus: *to name, call by name*
- obicio or objicio, obicēre, objeci, objectus: *to throw before, oppose*
- occido, occidēre, occidi, occisus: *strike down, slay*
- ostendo, ostendēre, ostendi, ostensus: *to show, expose*
- pareo, parēre, parui, paritus: *to be present, to wait on*
- pario, parēre, peperit, paritus: *to bear, give birth to*
- percutio, percutēre, percussi, percussus: *to strike, thrust or pierce through*
- perduco, perducēre, perduxit, perductus: *to guide, lead through*
- pereor, perire, perivi or perii, peritus: *to pass away, vanish*
- persequor, persequi, -, persecutus: *to follow, chase, pursue*
- pervenio, pervenire, perveni, perventus: *to come to, arrive at*
- peto, petēre, petivi or petii, petitus: *to attack, demand, seek*
- polliceor, pollicēri, -, pollicitus: *to promise*
- pono, ponēre, posui, positus: *to place*
- possum, posse, potui, -: *to be able*
- praecipito, praecipitare, praecipitavi, praecipitatus: *to cast down, to press, hasten*
- procreo, procreare, procreavi, procreatus: *to bring forth, beget*

- proficio, proficere, profeci, profectus: *to advance, make progress, obtain*
- proficiscor, proficisci, -, profectus: *to set out, depart*
- profugio, profugere, profugi, -: *to flee, escape*
- quaero, quaerere, quaesivi, quaesitus: *to seek for, acquire*
- rapio, rapere, rapui, raptus: *to seize and carry off*
- recipio, recipere, recepi, receptus: *regain, recover*
- redeo, redire, redivi or redii, reditus: *to go or come back, return*
- refero, referre, rettuli or retuli, relatus: *to return, restore*
- regno, regnare, regnavi, regnatus: *to rule*
- respondeo, respondere, respondi, responsus: *to answer, reply*
- rogo, rogare, rogavi, rogatus: *to ask*
- sacro, sacrare, sacravi, sacratus: *to consecrate, dedicate*
- sepelio, sepelire, sepelivi or sepelii, sepultus: *to bury*
- servo, servare, servavi, servatus: *to save, preserve*
- soleo, solere, solui, solitus: *to be accustomed*
- sum, esse, fui, futurus: *to be*
- tollo, tollere, sustuli, sublatu: *to raise up, elevate*
- trado, tradere, tradidi, traditus: *to hand over, deliver, surrender*
- venio, venire, veni, ventus: *to come*
- video, videre, vidi, visus: *to see*
- vinco, vincere, vici, victum: *to defeat, conquer*
- vivo, vivere, vixi, victus: *to live, be alive*
- voco, vocare, vocavi, vocatus: *to call together, summon*
- volo, velle, volui, -: *to wish, want*

47 Most frequent nouns in Hyginus, *Fabulae*

- amor, amoris *m*: *love*
- annus, anni *m*: *year*
- aper, apri *m*: *wild boar*
- aqua, aquae *f*: *water*
- arbor, arboris *f*: *tree*
- arma, armorum *n* (*pl* only): *arms, weapons*
- aurum, auri *n*: *gold*
- avis, avis *f*: *bird*
- beneficium, benefici *n*: *s*
- canis, canis *m* or *f*: *dog*
- caput, capitis *n*: *head*
- conjugium, conjugii *n*: *marriage*
- conjunx, conjugis *m* or *f*: *husband, wife*
- corpus, corporis *n*: *body*
- deus, dei *m*: *god*
- dies, diei *m*: *day*
- draco, draconis *m*: *serpent, dragon*
- dux, ducis *m*: *leader*
- equus, equi *m*: *horse*
- femina, feminae *f*: *woman*
- fides, fidei *f*: *faith, trustworthiness*
- filia, filiae *f*: *daughter*
- filius, filii *m*: *son*
- flumen, fluminis *n*: *river*
- forma, formae *f*: *shape, appearance*
- frater, fratris *m*: *brother*
- fulmen, fulminis *n*: *lightning*
- gladius, gladii *m*: *sword*
- homo, hominis *m*: *human being*
- hospes, hospitis *m*: *host, guest*

- hospitium, hospitii *n*: *hospitality*
- infans, infantis *m* or *f*: *infant, small child*
- insula, insulae *f*: *island*
- liber, liberi *m*: *child*
- locus, loci *m*: *place*
- ludus, ludi *m*: *play, game*
- mare, maris *n*: *sea*
- mater, matris *f*: *mother*
- mons, montis *m*: *mountain*
- mors, mortis *f*: *death*
- munus, muneris *n*: *work, service, job*
- murus, muri *m*: *city wall*
- navis, navis *f*: *ship*
- nomen, nominis *n*: *name*
- nox, noctis *f*: *night*
- numerus, numeri *m*: *number*
- nutrix, nutricis *f*: *nurse*
- nympa, nympae *f*: *nymph*
- oppidum, oppidi *n*: *town*
- parens, parentis *m*: *parent*
- pars, partis *f*: *part, portion*
- pastor, pastoris *m*: *shepherd*
- pater, patris *m*: *father*
- patria, patriae *f*: *home country*
- pecus, pecoris *n*: *cattle, herd*
- pellis, pellis *f*: *skin, hide*
- pes, pedis *m*: *foot*
- proci, proci *m*: *sutor*
- puer, pueri *m*: *boy*
- regnum, regni *n*: *kingdom*
- res, rei *f*: *thing, matter, affair*
- rex, regis *m*: *king*
- sacerdos, sacerdotis *m* or *f*: *priest, priestess*
- sagitta, sagitta *f*: *arrow*
- sepultura, sepulturae *f*: *burial*
- signum, signi *n*: *sign, token*
- sol, solis *m*: *sun*
- soror, sororis *f*: *sister*

- sors, sortis *f*: *lot, fate*
- stadium, stadii *n*: *stadium*
- taurus, tauri *m*: *bull*
- templum, templi *n*: *temple*
- tempus, temporis *n*: *time*
- terra, terrae *f*: *land, earth*
- uxor, uxoris *f*: *wife*
- vestis, vestis *f*: *clothing*
- vir, viri *m*: *man*
- virgo, virginis *f*: *young woman*
- voluntas, voluntatis *f*: *wish, will*

48 Most frequent adjectives in Hyginus, *Fabulae*

- alius, alia, aliud: *another*
- alter, altera, alterum: *other (of two)*
- ceterus, cetera, ceterum: *the other; the remainder*
- duo, duae, duo (**irregular**): *two*
- idem, eadem, idem: *the same*
- inferus, infera, inferum: *lower*
- liber, libera, liberum: *free*
- magnus, magna, magnum: *great, large*
- mortalis, mortale: *mortal, subject to death*
- multus, multa, multum: *much (sg.), many (pl.)*
- omnis, omnis: *each (sg.), all (pl.)*
- primus, prima, primum: *first*
- regius, regia, regium: *royal, kingly*
- sacer, sacra, sacrum: *holy, sacred*
- septem (*indeclinable*): *seven*
- socius, socia, socium: *allied*
- suus, sua, suum: ******reflexive possessive adjective, *his own, her own*
- tantus, tanta, tantum: *so great*
- unus, una, unum: *a single*

49 Most frequent adverbs in Hyginus, *Fabulae*

- ibi: *there*
- inde: *from there*
- ita: *so*
- item: *likewise, also*
- non: *not*
- postea: *later*
- tunc: *then*

50 Most frequent conjunctions in Hyginus, *Fabulae*

- *atque* or *ac*: and, and besides, and even
- *autem*: however, nonetheless
- *cum*: when
- *dum*: while
- *et*: and
- *itaque*: and so, accordingly
- *nam*: for
- *neque* or *nec*: not, and not, also not
- *ne*: *conjunction introducing several kinds of negative clauses*
- *postquam*: after
- *quia*: since
- *quod*: because
- *quoniam*: since
- *sed*: but
- *sive*: or
- *si*: if
- *ubi*: where, when
- *unde*: from where
- *ut*: *conjunction introducing several kinds of subordinate clauses* date: September 10, 2022 —

51 *Lingua Latina Legenda*: an open-source introduction to Latin

This open-source textbook is one part of a project to develop a new two-semester introduction to Latin at the College of the Holy Cross. Our curriculum is based on these principles:

- the course emphasizes authentic examples of language, and is organized around a target text (in this textbook, the *Fabulae* of Hyginus). Instead of composing made-up Latin, we draw on the target text as much as possible.
- we follow modern principles of language pedagogy in presenting first those features of language (syntactic, morphological, lexical) that are frequent in Latin, are inherently complex, and are most different from English forms of expression and thought.
- we determine the sequence of the textbook's topics based on computational analysis of the features needed to read unaltered passages of Hyginus.
- throughout the curriculum, we link the study of Latin to reflection on contemporary issues.

Our work at Holy Cross is taking place through the college's Scholarship in Action program, and we gratefully acknowledge its support.

52 About this textbook

The current on-line version of this textbook is simultaneously being drafted and used in Latin 101 at the College of the Holy Cross in 2022-2023.

We expect to complete the first half of the textbook through chapter 5, “Subordination,” in one college semester. Chapters are not intended to take equal amounts of time. Chapter 3, “Inflection of verbs, nouns, pronouns, and adjectives” requires approximately 6 weeks, and Chapter 5, “Subordination,” about a month; the intervening Chapter 4, “Richer sentences,” covers much less new material, and provides an opportunity to apply and reinforce the fundamental material from Chapter 3. At Holy Cross, this chapter falls around the time of our fall break, so is also a useful moment to regroup and refresh material covered in the first half of the semester.

You can download a dated PDF of the current draft from <https://github.com/LinguaLatina/textbook/raw/master/pdf/l3.pdf>.

The draft of this material that was used in 2021-2022 is included in the textbook website at <https://lingualatina.github.io/textbook/2021-2022/>.

53 Preliminaries

53.1 Alphabet and pronunciation

Latin is a historical language. Although it has never been lost, and has been used continuously for thousands of years, it has survived as a language we must learn as a second language: for many centuries, there have been no native speakers of Latin. In different parts of the world today, scholars use different conventions for pronouncing Latin. Italians pronounce Latin like Italian, Germans pronounce Latin like German, and the British pronunciation of Latin is hard even to describe.

Americans generally adopt a pronunciation (presented here) that reflects our knowledge of how individual letters and combinations of letters were pronounced, but we should not imagine that we can accurately reproduce the accent of a speaker of classical Latin.

53.2 The classical Latin alphabet: a quick guide

Our alphabet derives directly from the classical Latin alphabet, and has the same letters in the same order, except that classical Latin did not have J, V or W. Instead the letters I and U were used to write both pure vowel sounds and a semi-vowel or consonant. In addition, in the classical period, K, Y and Z were used only to spell words borrowed from Greek.

53.2.1 Consonant sounds

Consonants were mostly pronounced as in modern English, with the following notes:

- C and G are always “hard” (like “cut” and “go”, never like “cease” or “gyrate”).
- S is always unvoiced (like “cease”), never a z-sound (like “ease”)
- when I spelled a consonant sound, it was pronounced like English “y”
- when U spelled a consonant sound, it was pronounced like English “w”
- the double consonant PH came to be pronounced like F

53.2.2 Vowels

The five vowels a, e, i, o and u have “pure” sounds, without any glide, any approximately:

Vowel	English example of sound	Latin word to practice
A	aha	<i>mater</i> , “mother”
E	deck	<i>terra</i> , “earth”
I	see	<i>hic</i> , “he, this person”
O	no	<i>homo</i> , “person, human being”
U	do	<i>factum</i> , “deed, accomplishment”

Vowels could be long or short; as in a modern language like German, the long version of the vowel was literally held for a longer time than the short version.

Two vowels together could be pronounced as a single *diphthong*: these originally sounded like the two vowels pronounced successively but blending the first into the second.

Try pronouncing the following diphthongs in these Latin words, taken from Hyginus *Fabulae*:

Diphthong	Latin word
ae	<i>quaero</i> , “I seek”
au	<i>autem</i> , “however”
ei	<i>Deianira</i> , a wife of Hercules
eu	<i>Theseus</i> , an Athenian hero
oe	<i>poena</i> , “penalty, punishment”
ui	<i>fluit</i> , “it flows”

53.2.3 Orthography

Like the inscriptions and papyri surviving from the classical period, many Latin manuscripts and printed editions of Latin texts use only I and U. Others use I for both vocalic and consontal sounds, but distinguish U and V. Still others use I, J, U and V. Long and short vowels were not distinguished in writing.

In this text book, when we introduce forms and new vocabulary, we will sometimes include long and short marks on vowels, but when we cite passages of Hyginus, we will normally write vowels without quantity mark,

and will use only I and U (not J and V).

53.3 Syllables and accent

53.3.1 Syllables and their quantity

Latin words have as many syllables as there are vowels or diphthongs: *Her-cu-les* *poe-na*, *quae-ro*.

A syllable is **long** if:

1. it has a long vowel or a diphthong, (e.g., the first syllable of *Rō-ma* is long)
2. or a short vowel is followed by a cluster of two consonants, (e.g., the first syllable of *Her-cu-les* is long because the *e* is followed by two consonants, *rc*)
3. except that the cluster is **short** if the cluster is *l* or *r* following one of : *b*, *d*, *g*, *p*, *t*, *c*, or the combination *ph* (e.g., the first syllable of *pă-tris* is short because the cluster after a short vowel is *t* followed by *r*).

Other syllables with short vowels are **short** (e.g., the second syllable of *Her-cŭ-les* is short).

53.3.2 Accent

Every Latin word with more than one syllable had a stress accent on either the next to last syllable (sometimes called the **penult**), or the one before it (the **antepenult**). The placement of the accent depends on whether the next to last syllable is long or short. If the penult is long, then it is accented; otherwise, the syllable before it is accented. Examples:

- *a-mī-cus*, “friend,” has a long penult: pronounce it *amícus*.
- *Her-cŭ-les* has a short penult: pronounce it *Hércules*

If a word has only two syllables, the penult is accented no matter what:

- pronounce *căp-ŭt*, “head” as *cáput*.

54 Inflection of verbs, nouns, pronouns, and adjectives

In Unit 1, we will look at how inflection works in the Latin language. We begin by with the concept of an inflected language and detailing how Latin's use of inflection differs from English' use of it. The key takeaway here will be that while English primarily relies on word order to convey grammatical function, Latin uses word endings to do so.

We will then move to examine the various different substantives – noun, pronoun, and adjective – and how they are inflected in Latin. In spite of their different usages, all these substantive forms have three characteristics – case, number, and grammatical gender – and these characteristics signal the substantive's role in a sentence. Consequently, we will learn how to recognize, form, analyze, and translate substantives and substantive phrases based on these characteristics. To accomplish this task, we will become familiar with the way that dictionary entries for substantives work and especially how these entries help us to understand the rules for the inflection of the particular substantive, something that is often referred to as a noun's declension.

We will build on our discussion of substantive inflection by looking at verbal inflection. We will learn about the five characteristics of verbs – person, number, tense, voice, and mood – and how these characteristics create meaning in a Latin sentence. As we did with substantives, we will learn how to recognize, form, analyze, and translate verbs based on these characteristics. Once again, we will spend time learning about dictionary entries for verbs and how the information contained therein can help us to better understand a specific verbal form. We will also learn some of the rules for verbal inflection, i.e. conjugation.

The last part of this unit will look at how Latin puts together these inflected forms at the sentence level. We will learn about different types of sentence structures found in Latin, the particular collocations of verbal and substantive forms that they use, and the way that we translate these forms.

54.1 Objectives

By the end of Unit 1, you will be able to:

- Explain the basic principles of inflection in the Latin language as well as how it differs from English
- Articulate the different features of substantives (nouns, adjectives, and pronouns) and the information that these features provide

- Recognize and produce substantive inflection patterns and analyze their grammatical function in sentences Articulate the different features of verbal forms and the information that they provide
- Recognize and produce some basic verbal inflection patterns and analyze their grammatical function in sentences
- Explain how different grammatical features of language shape the way we understand the world around us

54.2 Latin: an inflected language

54.2.1 Inflection

One of the most striking differences between Latin and English is how Latin changes the form of words to indicate their function in a sentence, where English uses word order. We call this systematic change in forms **inflection**.

English has only limited grammatical inflection today, but most English nouns have different forms indicating whether they are singular or plural: “dog” means only one, but “dogs” means more than one. Adding an -s to a noun is a regular pattern in English. We could say that -s is the regular inflectional ending to indicate the grammatical property of *number* for a noun.

Aside: English is related to Latin as part of the larger IndoEuropean family of languages, and in earlier phases of its history had a much fuller system of inflection, comparable to Latin.

In the present tense, English verbs in the *third person singular* (he, she, it) also change form to indicate number: “she says” but “they say.” We use singular verb forms only with singular subjects, and plural verb forms with plural subjects: “The dogs run,” but “The dog runs.”

Some English nouns change their form in less predictable ways: “mouse” is a singular noun, and “mice” is plural. Native speakers learn this without thinking about it; people who learn English as a second language have to memorize this as an exception to the regular pattern of adding -s to form plurals.

A few English nouns do not change their form to indicate number. “Moose” could refer to one or more of the largest mammal in the deer family. (And “deer” poses the same problem: one or more?) A native speaker of English can say, “The moose walks,” and “The moose walk.” The verb makes it clear that in the first sentence, “moose” is singular, but plural in the the second sentence.

54.2.2 Function and form

Like English, Latin uses inflection to show the number of nouns and verbs, but Latin’s system of inflection far more extensive than English.

English, for example, follows a strict word order to indicate subject, verb and direct object of a sentence. “Dog bites man” is an everyday sentence: the subject is “Dog,” and the direct object is “man.” “Man bites dog” is a headline: the man is now doing the biting, and dog is the recipient of the action.

Latin most frequently (but not always) places the verb at the end of a sentence. You could equally comfortably have a three-word sentence in the order Object-Subject-Verb, or Subject-Object-Verb, because the inflected form of the subject and the object will show clearly what role each word plays.

Aside You will probably never find the order English requires: Subject-Verb-Object! When we read Latin, and we practice our skills with Latin composition, we’ll want to consider what nuance or emphasis is expressed through different choices of Latin’s more flexible word order.

See the following introduction to inflection from Dominic Machado for Latin examples drawn from Hyginus’ *Fabulae* of how Latin inflection can work>

54.3 Verbal units

When people listen to their native language, we don’t simply hear a stream of sound: we intuitively cluster meaningful units together. When we learn to read, we similarly learn how to recognize clusters of letters and words, to “chunk” the text into meaningful units.

As you learn how to read Latin, we will emphasize this crucial skill. Rather than simply analyzing one word at a time reading left to right, you will learn how to see sentences and whole paragraphs as compositions of smaller pieces, each with a recognizable structure and meaning.

We will use the term **verbal unit** to refer to the most important underlying structure in Greek. A **verb** is a word that expresses an action or a state of being. (As Schoolhouse Rock put it decades ago, “Verb: that’s what happening.”) A verbal unit combines some form of a verb with a subject to express a complete idea.

Compared to English, Latin has an rich system of verb forms to create different kinds of verbal units. We will see, forexample, how Latin can use participles to form verbal units quite different from anything in English.

The most important verbal unit in Latin, however, is the **finite verb**. Every sentence has at least one verbal unit expressed with a finite verb plus a subject, even if these are only implied. Subjects and verbs can be implied in English, too: if someone asks you “Coffee or tea?” they are implying “Would you like coffee or tea?” a sentence with a subject (“you”) and verb (“would like”).

We have borrowed our own word “verb” from Latin grammarians. They referred to verbs with the term *verbum*, an everyday word that could mean a “sentence,” “expression,” or even “conversation.” *verbum* is a complete idea. Even if you leave out every other word of a sentence, the finite verb constitutes a complete statement.

54.4 Finite verbs

Finite verb forms have five properties: **person**, **number**, **tense**, **mood**, and **voice**. To properly identify a finite verb form, you must identify all five properties. Latin finite verb forms contain all of this information in the verb form itself. In English, we often need other words to convey some of this information, such as subject pronouns to convey the person and number, and auxiliary (or “helping”) verbs to express tense, mood, and voice.

54.4.1 Person

A verb’s person expresses the subject of the verb in relation to the “speaker” of the sentence.

1. The first person (*I* or *we* in English) subject includes the speaker.
2. The second person (*you* in English) subject is the addressee(s) of the speaker.
3. The third person (*he, she, it, they* in English) subject is a person or thing separate from the speaker and addressee.

54.4.2 Number

Number combines with person in describing the subject of verb. It indicates when the subject is **singular** or **plural**. In English, for example, the first person singular is *I* while first person plural is *we*.

54.4.3 Tense

The **tense** of a finite verb describes the time of the action. Latin has six tenses: three of them refer to present or future time, name the **present**, **future**, and **future perfect** tenses. Three other tenses refer to past time: the **imperfect**, **perfect** and **pluperfect** tenses.

54.4.4 Mood

The mood of a verb indicates the function of the expression and the nature of the action in the speaker’s conception. “Mood” and “mode” come from the same root in English: the “mood” of a verb is the “mode” in which the verb is operating.

Latin has moods:

1. the **indicative**, used to express a statement or question of a factual nature (in the eyes of the speaker) in the past, present, or future.
2. the **imperative**, used to give a command

3. the **subjunctive** mood has many uses in subordinate clauses, and is also used to express potential or possible action.

54.4.5 Voice

Voice expresses the relationship between the action of the verb and the subject. Like English, Latin has two voices: **active**, in which the subject is performing the action of the verb (“I love”), and **passive**, in which the subject is receiving the action of the verb (“I am loved”).

54.5 Principal parts of verbs

All verb forms in these many combinations of person, number, tense, mood and voice (as well as forms we will learn later, such as infinitives and participles), are formed using the verb’s **principal parts**.

English verbs have a system of principal parts, too, although native speakers may not think about them that way. In English, the principal parts can include the present tense, the past tense, and the past participle: for example, play, played, played; swim, swam, swum; go, went, gone; do, did, done.

Latin verbs have four principal parts (although for some verbs not all parts may exist). In a glossary or a lexicon, Latin verbs are listed according to the first principal part, and so if you are looking a verb up you will need to be able to move from a verb form made from any principal part to its first principal part in order to find it in the lexicon.

54.6 Forms of principal parts

Two of the principal parts, the first and third, are finite verbs in a first person singular form (“I”) of the indicative mood. We’ll use them to find the stems we can modify with endings to create finite verb forms. The other two are forms of the verb we’ll learn to use in following chapters.

1. The **first principal part** is the first person singular in the *present* active indicative (or the present passive indicative if active forms do not exist). Drop the
2. The **second principal** is an *infinitive*. (We’ll begin learning about uses of the infinitive in units 2 and 3.) You’ll look at the second principal part to find what set of endings to use with a stem.
3. The **third principal part** is the first person singular in the *perfect* active indicative. If the verb has no active forms, it has no third principal part.
4. The **fourth principal part** is a *participle*. We’ll learn in this unit how to use it create perfect passive forms.

54.6.1 Verb conjugations

Latin verbs are organized into four **conjugations**, a grouping where they share common endings. To find what conjugation a verb belongs to, look at the second principal part. In regular verbs, it will have one of four possible endings corresponding to the four conjugations.

- āre : first conjugation
- ēre : second conjugation
- ěre: third conjugation
- ĩre: fourth conjugation

54.6.2 Examples of principal parts

Principal parts are listed in order, 1-4. Memorize these the principal parts of these twelve common verbs that you will see repeatedly in reading Hyginus.

- amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus - to love
- audiō, audire, audīvī, audītus - to hear
- capiō, capere, cēpī, captus - to take, seize
- dō, dare, dedī, datus - to give
- dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus - to lead
- faciō, facere, fēcī, factus - to make, do
- fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitus - to flee
- habēō, habere, habuī, habitus - to have
- interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectus - to kill
- mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus - to send
- veniō, venire, vēnī, ventus - to come
- videō, videre, vīdī, visus - to see;

54.6.3 Looking for patterns

As you learn principal parts, you should practice noticing patterns and then using those patterns to help you recognize, retrieve, use, and even take an educated guess at, a principal part.

Two good examples from your unit 1 vocabulary list are amō and audiō. Regular nouns of the first conjugation will change in exactly the same ways as amō. Drop the *-āre* ending from the second principal part, and you can reliably produce the others by add *-ō* to create the first part, *-āvī* to create the third part and *-ātus* for the fourth part.

Similarly, for regular verbs of the fourth conjugation, drop the *-ire* ending from the second part, and add *-iō* for the first part, *-ivī* for the second part, and *-itus* for the fourth part.

54.7 The perfect active tense

The form of a finite verb in Latin expresses the subject as well as the verb: it is a complete verbal unit by itself. Example: the form *venit* means “he came, arrived” or “she came, arrived”; the form *venērunt* means “they came, arrived.” These are already complete sentences that do not need a separate word for “he,” “she” or “they.”

54.7.1 The indicative mood and narrating events in the past

As already described above, finite verbs have five properties: person, number, tense, mood, and voice.

The **indicative** is one of the three moods of the Latin verb. It is the mode of verb used for narrating factual events, and for that reason is frequently seen in most texts.

Latin has more than one tense for narrating events in the past, but they differ in **aspect** — that is, how to think of or picture the action the verb is representing.

- the **perfect tense** expresses an action as single and simple, without indication of its completion or continuation
- the **imperfect tense** expresses an action as continuous, started, ongoing, habitual or in any way incomplete

The choice of verb tense, then, involves not only an indication that the events happened in the past, but other information about the event. Do you want to emphasize it as a single incident? Choose the perfect indicative if so. Or do you want to indicate that it happened over a length of time, was repeated or habitual, perhaps was started but not completed? The imperfect indicative will give you the means to add those shades of meaning.

54.7.2 Meaning of the perfect indicative

The perfect indicative represents the action as *single, simple, distinct*, the equivalent of a snapshot of the action. The tense that is the closest to this idea in English is the “simple past,” the past tense formed in the active voice by adding *-ed* to the verb stem, or made by changes to the stem, with no other “helping” verbs. Examples of the “simple past” in the active voice: “He walked,” “she ran,” “they watched,” “She taught,” “they learned.”

To understand a verb form, you must take into account all five properties: person, number, tense, mood and voice. In the active voice, the subject performs the action. In the passive voice, the subject receives the action.

To form finite verbs in the perfect tense and active voice, you will use the *third* principal part. Remember that this part is already an indicative form of the perfect active, namely the first person singular. When you see a vocabulary listing like this:

veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventus, "to come"

you know that *vēnī* means “I came.”

54.7.3 Forming and analyzing the perfect active

The general pattern you’ll follow for forming inflected words is:

- find the correct stem
- apply the correct ending

The *stem* dictates what possible tenses and voices can be formed; the *ending* identifies the person, number and mood.

The third principal part is used for all forms of the perfect active. To find its stem, drop the final *-i*. For *venio*, then:

(1) *veni* → *ven-*

Let’s express “They arrived,” a complete sentence in the indicative mood. We to add the ending that expresses the third plural of the indicative, which is *-ērunt*

(2) *ven* + *ērunt* → *venērunt*

Voilà! You’ve just expressed the English idea “They arrived.” with the complete Latin sentence *venērunt*.

To analyze a Latin verb form, you can mentally reverse the process: if you isolate what ending is used with what stem, you can identify the form. When you see *venērunt* in a text, you can tell yourself that since *-ērunt* is the third plural.

All four conjugations work exactly the same way and use exactly the same endings for the perfect active indicative. Memorize this pair of endings:

Person	Singular	Plural
Third	-it	ērunt

Here is a complete example with translation using the verb *fugiō, fugēre, fūgī, fugitus* - “to flee.”

Person	Singular	Plural
Third	fugit, “he, she fled”	fugērunt, “they fled”

54.8 The perfect passive

54.8.1 Meaning of the perfect passive

In the passive voice, the subject of the verb is not the person or thing performing the action, but the one receiving it. The sentence “As a baby, Hercules killed two serpents with his hands” is in the **active voice**. “Hercules” is the subject; the verb, “killed,” is in the active voice, and “two serpents” is the direct object of the verb. In the active voice, the direct object is what receives the action.

But we could turn this around. “Two serpents were killed by Hercules” is in the **passive voice**. The grammatical subject is “two serpents,” but the serpents are not performing the action of killing: they’re receiving it. The two sentences mean approximately the same thing (although they put a slightly different emphasis on what’s important about the statement).

For both sentences, Latin will use a perfect tense, since the action of killing the serpents was a single, completed, one-time act. Hyginus uses the verb *neco*, a regular first-conjugation verb (so its principal parts are *neco*, *necāre*, *necauī*, *necatus*). If we want to tell the story in the active voice, Hercules will be the subject, so we would use the third person singular form, *necauit*.

But what if we wanted to turn it around, to make the serpents the subject of a passive verb, “the serpents were killed”? Let’s look at how to form the perfect passive.

54.8.2 Formation of the perfect passive

In the perfect tense, the passive voice forms are **compound forms**. They use a form of the verb “to be” together with a form of the fourth principal part, which (as we’ll learn in detail in unit 4) is a **participle**. This is actually quite similar to the way English forms the past tense in the passive: the sentence “the serpents were killed” uses a form of the form “to be” plus a participle, “killed,” to express a passive voice action in the past. Latin uses present tense forms of “to be,” however. You’ll need to memorize these two forms:

Person	Singular	Plural
Third	est	sunt

The fourth principal part of *neco* is *necatus*, and used together with the verb “to be” creates a perfect passive form: *necatus est* means, “He was killed.”

The participle changes form its depending on the subject of the sentence, by applying different endings to the stem of the fourth part. We’ll learn more about grammatical gender later in this chapter, but for now, let’s note that the distinct forms of the fourth principal part will tell us the **gender** of the subject, and will match the **number** of the verb.

To find the stem of the fourth part, drop *-us*.

(1) *necatus* -> *necat-*

Then apply one of these endings:

Gender	Singular	Plural
Masculine	-us	-i
Feminine	-a	-ae
Neuter	-um	-a

We’ll consider the serpents to be masculine, and we know we have more than one of them, so we’ll use the ending *-i*.

(2) *necat-* + *-i* -> *necati*

Our form of “to be” will also be plural, to match the number of serpents, so our final statement will be *necati sunt*.

This is actually a complete sentence in Latin: “they (masculine) were killed.” Notice that it is possible to make a statement in the passive voice without indicating who did the action. This use of the passive is much beloved by people who want to avoid taking responsibility. (Consider an English sentence like, “Mistakes were made.”)

- use 4th principal part, adjective. Will look more at adjectives in this chapter, but note:
 - gender, number in a subject form (nominative case)
 - **agreement** among 4th part, *sum* and expressed or implied subject
- memorize endings:

Examples from Hyginus

54.9 The imperfect indicative

The imperfect indicative is another way of narrating factual events in the past. As we have seen, the perfect views an action as a single action completed in the past. The imperfect, by contrast, expresses an action that is incomplete, repeated, continuous or ongoing, habitual, or in some other way *not* viewed as single and complete. To express similar ideas, English uses additional “helping” verbs: “she was going,” “he started to go,” “they used to go.”

For example, Hyginus describes the Cyclops by saying “he had one eye.” In English, we can use the simple past tense “had” to express this, but Latin makes clear that this was not a single, one-time action. It was almost a state of being: the Cyclops *always* had one eye, so Hyginus uses the imperfect in the phrase

unum oculum habebat.

habebat is the third singular of the imperfect indicative active. Let’s look at how it’s formed.

54.9.1 Formation of the imperfect tense

You form both the active and passive voice of the imperfect tense from the *second* principal part. As with the perfect active, you find the stem, and add the appropriate ending for the person, number and voice that you want.

- stem: drop -re of second part
- endings same for all conjugations.

The complete process to form the imperfect tense then looks like:

- (1) start by dropping -re from the second part:

habēre -> habē-

- (2) Add the appropriate ending. For this chapter, you should memorize the third person* endings for singular and plural (listed here).

habē- + -bat -> habebat

Person and Number	Active ending	Passive ending
third singular	-bat	-batur
third plural	-bant	-bantur

The passive voice works in exactly the same way. Hyginus tells us that one of the Argonauts was Lynceus, who had a kind of night vision superpower: he could see in the dark because “he was not hindered by any darkness.” Hyginus uses the verb *inhibebatur* in the imperfect to express the continuous, repeated event: Lynceus was *never* bothered by darkness. The verb *inhibeo*, “to restrain, prevent” is a compound of *habeo* with the following principal parts:

inhibeo, inhibēre, inhibui, inhibitus

- (1) Find the stem by dropping *-re* from the second principal part:

inhibēre -> *inhibē-*

- (2) Add the right ending. Here, we want the third singular ending for the passive voice:

inhibē- + *-batur* -> *inhibebatur*

54.10 Nouns

A **noun** names a person, animal, place, or thing (whether that “thing” is concrete or abstract). Our term again comes from Latin grammarians: “noun” comes from Latin *nomen*, which generically just means “name.”

In a clause or sentence, nouns can fulfill various functions. A noun might be the subject of the verb: the person, place, or thing doing the action the verb represents. A noun might be the object of the verb, the recipient of the verb’s action, or the indirect (or secondary) object of that action. A noun might further describe another noun, or be paired with a preposition to act adjectivally or adverbially. It may describe the means by which the action of the verb happens. Or it might name the addressee of the sentence.

In Latin, the function of the noun is represented by its **case**, and the case is indicated by the ending attached to the noun’s stem. We have already seen that endings provide a great deal of information in a verb form, and the same is true for nouns. Identifying the case of a noun is key to understanding how it is functioning in that particular sentence.

54.10.1 Overview of nouns

All Latin nouns have three properties: **gender**, **case**, and **number**.

Every noun belongs to one of three grammatical **genders**. Although the grammatical genders are named **masculine**, **feminine**, and **neuter**, these are arbitrary linguistic categories, not biological gender. (You can learn more how ancient Latin grammarians thought about biological and grammatical gender in this unit’s section on “Latin in Action.”) There is no particular reason that the noun for “river”, *flumen*, is neuter, but the noun for “island”, *insula*, is feminine.

Case indicates the function of a noun in a sentence. Cases are expressed and identified by endings. There are six cases: **nominative**, **genitive**, **dative**, **accusative**, **ablative** and **vocative**. In this module we will look at some of the most important functions indicated by the nominative, genitive, dative, accusative and ablative cases.

Noun forms have the same two **numbers** as verb forms: singular, and plural.

54.10.1.1 Dictionary entry of nouns

The dictionary entry of a noun concisely encodes all the information you need to know in order to produce or recognize all of its cases and numbers. The first part tells you its nominative singular form, the second part is its genitive singular form, and the third crucial detail is its gender(s), usually abbreviated *m*, *f* or *n*.

54.10.1.1.1 Examples of dictionary entries The following vocabulary entries are included in the required vocabulary list for this module. Let's unpack their information more fully:

- *flumen, fluminis* n., "river"
- *insula, insulae* f., "island"

The first noun has the meaning "river." Its nominative singular form is *flumen*; the genitive singular form is *fluminis*; all of its forms are neuter.

The second noun has the meaning "island." Its nominative singular form is *insula*; the genitive singular form is *insulae*; all of its forms are feminine.

You'll also see this entry:

- *cānis, cānis* m. or f., "dog"

The listing "m. or f." means that the noun can be *either* grammatically masculine *or* grammatically feminine.

54.10.1.2 Declension

We use the term **declension** to refer to a group of nouns that share the same set of endings. In the first half of this course, we will focus on three frequent declensions of nouns that make up the overwhelming majority of noun forms you will see in reading Latin. Scholars of Latin creatively refer to as the **first**, **second** and **third declensions**. You can recognize the declension of a noun by looking at the ending of its genitive singular:

- *-ae*: first declension
- *-i*: second declension
- *-is*: third declension

54.11 The genitive case

The **genitive case** is used to relate one noun to another. (In fact, this is a characteristic feature of *all* the languages in the Indo-European family that includes Latin.) While you may often find that nouns in the genitive case are translated with the English preposition “of,” it is important to understand the range of underlying ideas expressed by the genitive in Latin.

54.11.1 Some general uses of the genitive

The complicated story of Procris and her husband Cephalus illustrates some common uses of the genitive case.

- *Possession*: Diana gave to Procris a hunting dog, and Hyginus refers to the *potentia canis*. *potentia* is a nominative noun, “power, strength;” *canis* is genitive singular, “dog.” Here, the genitive expresses *possession*: the dog possessed strength or power. In these instances, we might translate the genitive into English with the preposition “of” or with the possessive marker “s,” “the dog’s strength,” or “the strength of the dog.”
- *Subjective genitive or objective genitive*: Cephalus admired the dog greatly, and Hyginus refers to the *amor canis*. *amor*, *amoris* f. means “love, admiration”. There is always an ambiguity when the noun expressing a verbal idea is modified by a second noun in the genitive case, just as there is in an English phrase like “love of God.” Does that mean that God loves someone? If so, we would say it is a **subjective genitive**, since we are interpreting the meaning of the phrase “of God” as the equivalent of the subject of a verb “to love.” But it could equally mean the love that someone feels for God. We would call that an **objective genitive**, since we are interpreting “of God” as the equivalent of a direct object in a phrase like “they love God.” In this passage of Hyginus, the context makes it clear that he is referring to Cephalus’ love for or admiration of the hunting dog, not the dog’s love for Cephalus, but grammatically the *amor canis* is identical to what a pet owner could say to refer to their faithful dog’s love.

Hyginus’ story of Erechtheus’ four daughters illustrates another common use of the genitive to refer to a group or “whole,” when the noun it modifies names part of the whole or one among the group.

- *Partitive genitive or genitive of the whole*: Erechtheus’ daughters took an oath that if *one of them* died, the others would commit suicide. Hyginus expresses this with the phrase *una eārum*. As we’ll see in this chapter, *eārum* is the feminine genitive plural form of a pronoun meaning “them”; *una* is a nominative form meaning “one woman.”

54.12 The nominative case

The **nominative case** is a naming case. Its most frequent function is to indicate the **subject** of a finite verb.

The subject of a verb will match the person and number of the verb form: a *singular* noun in the nominative case will have a third person *singular* verb form, and a nominative *plural* noun acting as the subject will match a third person *plural* verb. We use the term **agreement** to refer to this matching of grammatical properties.

Consider these examples. In his account of Theseus' adventures, Hyginus says that Theseus came to Crete:

Theseus uenit

The dictionary form for Theseus' name in Latin is "*Theseus, Thesei, m.*," so *Theseus* is nominative, singular, and masculine. *uenit*, "he came," is perfect, active and indicative; since it is in the third person singular, it *agrees* with the subject *Theseus*.

In the story of the seven heroes who fought against Thebes, Hyginus says, "The seven leaders were going there" (in order to fight),

Septem ductores ibant

ductor, ductōris, m., means "leader, commander. The form *ductores* is masculine, nominative and plural. (We'll see the plural forms of the nominative case below.) *ibant* is in from the irregular verb *eō*, "to go." It is imperfect indicative active. Even in the irregular form, you can recognize that the ending is third person plural, so it agrees with the plural subject *ductores*.

54.13 Nouns in the nominative and genitive

Creating noun forms is similar to creating finite verb forms: (1) you find the stem from the dictionary entry, and (2) add the proper ending. For finite verbs, you had to choose the appropriate principal part of the verb to find its stem. For nouns, you use the genitive singular form (the second word in a dictionary entry), and drop the genitive ending.

s

54.13.1 Endings for the nominative and genitive cases

54.13.1.1 First declension

Nouns using first declension endings can be masculine or feminine: you have to memorize the gender when you learn a vocabulary item.

Note that the genitive singular and the nominative plural of first-declension nouns have the same ending!

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	-a	-ae
Genitive	-ae	-arum

Example: *femina, feminae* f, “woman”

You can recognize from the genitive singular form that *femina* is a first-declension noun. Drop the *ae* ending from the genitive singular to find the stem *femin*, and add the appropriate endings for case and number.

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	<i>femina</i>	<i>feminae</i>
Genitive	<i>feminae</i>	<i>feminarum</i>

54.13.1.2 Second declension

Second declension nouns can be masculine or neuter. For *masculine* nouns of the second declension, the genitive singular and the nominative plural of first-declension nouns have the same ending – the same ambiguity as the first declension!

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	-us <i>or</i> -	-i
Genitive	-i	-orum

Compare the forms for these two masculine nouns:

- *filius, filii* m: “son”
- *liber, liberi* m: “child”

You can see from the first form that *filius* has an ending in *-us*. Note that when we drop the *-i* from the genitive singular, the stem is *fili*.

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	<i>filius</i>	<i>filii</i>

Case	Singular	Plural
Genitive	fili	fili orum

liber has no ending added to its stem in the nominative singular: the nominative singular form is identical to the stem we find from dropping the genitive singular ending.

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	liber	liberi
Genitive	liberi	liber orum

Neuter nouns differ from masculine nouns of the second declension in the nominative case. You can always distinguish the nominative and genitive of neuter nouns.

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	-um	-a
Genitive	-i	-orum

oppidum, oppidi n: “town”

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	oppid um	oppida
Genitive	oppidi	oppid orum

54.13.1.3 Third declension

Third declension nouns can be masculine, feminine or neuter. The form of the nominative singular can look quite different from the genitive singular, but to create all the other forms, you follow the regular process of adding the correct endings to the stem you find from the genitive singular (for the third declension, by dropping *-is*).

Note that the genitive plural ending resembles the nominative singular ending of second declension neuter nouns like *oppidum*!

Masculine and feminine nouns normally use this set of endings:

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	(varies)	-es
Genitive	-is	-um

canis, canis m or f: “dog”

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	canis	canes
Genitive	canis	canum

A few third declension nouns called “i-stems” have a genitive plural in *-ium*.

avis, avis f: “bird”

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	avis	aves
Genitive	avis	avium

Neuter nouns have the same nominative plural ending as second-declension neuters.

caput, capitis n: “head”

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	caput	caputa
Genitive	capitis	caputum

54.14 Adjectives in the nominative and genitive

54.15 Adjectives

Adjectives are words that describes a noun or pronou. Like nouns, adjectives have gender, case, and number; adjectives will have the same gender, case and number as the noun they describe. We previously used the term **agreement** to refer to subjects and verbs matching in person and number; we also say that adjectives **agree** with the noun they modify when adjective and noun have the same gender, case and number. As when you identify a noun form, to identify the form of an adjective, you must indicate its gender, case and number.

54.15.1 Dictionary entry

As with nouns, we'll start by learning to read the most common patterns you'll encounter in dictionary entries for adjectives.

A large group of adjectives simply lists the three nominative singular forms. The order of the nominative singular forms that dictionaries use is: masculine nominative singular, feminine nominative singular, and neuter nominative singular. For example, the vocabulary list for this unit includes this adjective entry:

- *magnus, magna, magnum*: "large"

54.15.2 First- and second-declension (or 2-1-2) adjectives

As with nouns, we group adjectives using the same patterns of endings into **declensions**, and as with nouns, we can determine the declension by looking at the dictionary entry. The endings for the three nominative singular forms *magnus, magna, magnum* should look familiar to you. Adjectives that follow this pattern use the same endings for the masculine forms as for second-declension nouns; the endings for the feminine forms are the same as for first-declension nouns; and the neuter forms use the forms of second-declension neuter nouns. This declension is therefore called the **first and second adjective declension**, since it uses the same endings as nouns of the first and second declensions, or the **2-1-2 adjective declension** since for the dictionary order of masculine-feminine-neuter, it uses 2nd declension / 1st declension / 2nd declension endings, respectively.

Let's apply your knowledge of noun endings to analyze these examples of noun phrases in the nominative plural:

1. magna corpora
2. magnae insulae
3. magni canes
4. magnae canes

In the first example, the noun *corpora* is neuter nominative plural, so we use the masculine nominative plural ending *a* for the adjective. The next example uses the feminine noun *insulae*, so we use the feminine nominative plural ending *-ae*. The third and fourth examples use the nonnominative plural noun *canes*, which by itself could be either masculine or feminine. In these examples, there is no ambiguity, however: *magni* uses the masculine nominative plural ending, so the phrase *magni canes* must be masculine; similarly, *magnae canes* must be feminine.

As the latter two examples clearly show, the agreement of noun and adjective does *not* mean that the case endings of the noun and verb will be the same! Adjectives of any declension pattern can describe nouns of any declension. Let's use the same 2-1-2 adjective to describe the genitive singular of the third declension noun *corporis* ("body"). Since the noun *corpus* is neuter, we'll need to use the neuter genitive singular ending for the adjective. Check the agreement of this noun phrase:

- *magni corporis*

corporis has the correct genitive singular ending for a neuter noun of the third declension; the ending *i* is the neuter genitive singular for second declension nouns and adjectives so the adjective form *magni* agrees.

54.15.3 Third-declension adjectives with one ending

Some dictionary entries for adjectives look similar to the dictionary entry for a noun: they have a nominative singular and feminine singular form. In contrast to a noun entry, however, they have no single gender, since adjectives can modify nouns of any gender. Here is an example

- *ingens, ingentis*: "enormous, huge"

Adjectives like *ingens* will use the same endings for the nominative singular of all three genders, so you can use the first item in the entry to describe a nominative singular noun of any gender: *ingens liber*, *ingens insula*, *ingens corpus*. The second item is the genitive singular form for all three genders.

As with nouns, to find the stem for adding other endings, you drop the ending of the genitive singular. In this group of adjectives, the ending is *-is*, and as you might already have guessed, that is telling us to use endings you've already learned for the *third* declension. Let's form the nominative plural of the nouns in the previous example.

First, we find the stem by dropping the *-is* ending.

ingentis -> *ingent*

We will now add *third* declension endings to the adjective forms.

The nominative plural of the second-declension noun *liber* is *liberi*; it is *masculine*, so we will add the third-declension ending for masculine nominative plural to form our adjective:

ingent- + es -> ingentes liberi

The nominative plural of the first-declension noun *insula* is *insulae*; it is *feminine*, so we will add the third-declension ending for feminine nominative plural to form our adjective. Remember that both masculine and feminine nouns of the third declension use *-es* for their nominative plural ending.

ingent- + es -> ingentes insulae

The nominative plural of the third-declension noun *corpus* is *corpora*; it is *neuter*. Neuter adjectives have endings similar to *i-stem* nouns. The ending *-a* for neuter nominative plural will look familiar, but note the *-i*:

ingent- + ia -> ingentia corpora

54.15.4 Third-declension adjectives with two endings

Another group of adjectives that use third-declension endings will list two nominative forms: the nominative singular for either masculine or feminine, and the nominative singular for neuter. Here is an example:

horribilis, horribile: “terrible, fearful”

You can easily distinguish these two kinds of dictionary entry for third declension nouns. When the second form ends in *-is* (like *ingens, ingentis*), it is a genitive singular form for all three genders; when the second form ends in *-e*, it is a neuter nominative singular. Adjectives like *horribilis, horribile* use the same endings for masculine and feminine forms, but a distinct set of endings for the neuter. Compare these nominative singular forms:

- *liber horribilis*
- *insula horribilis*
- *corpus horribiles*

To find the stem for adding further endings, drop the nominative singular ending of the dictionary form. Take your pick and drop *-is* from the masculine/feminine form, or drop the *-e* from the neuter form: you’ll wind up with the same stem. Here is the formation of the nominative plural forms for the same three nouns.

Find the stem:

horribilis -> horribil

Then apply the appropriate ending. Masculine and feminine forms will use the same ending:

horribil- + es -> horribiles liberi

horribil- + es -> horribiles insulae

For neuter nouns, add the distinctive neuter ending:

horribil- + ia -> horribilia corpora

A note on English adjectives: Because English does not have endings for gender and case of nouns and even uses the same form of adjectives for both singular and plural, English lacks explicit rules about noun-adjective agreement. The adjective does not change form between *one green shoe* and *two green shoes*, an *old woman* or a group of *old men*. But note that English has interesting “ingrained” rules about the *order* of adjectives when there is more than one. Most native speakers of English know these rules as just what “sounds right” or “sounds wrong.” “Old green shoes” obeys these rules while “green old shoes” does not. See more in the discussion this blog post for language rules English speakers know but don’t know we know

English language learners are sometimes asked to learn these rules about adjective order explicitly. That is a good reminder of the way in which language rules are sometimes defined for non-native-speakers (and we are all non-native speakers of Latin!) in a way that complicates the sense of a language meant to communicate.

54.16 Demonstrative pronouns in the nominative and genitive

- introduce demonstratives as example or pronouns (new part of speech)
- introduce pronominal use
- introduce formation of adjectives, and forms of the nominative and genitive
- introduce adjectival use

54.17 The personal agent of passive verbs

- introduce the **ablative** case
- forms in 3 declensions of nouns, in adjectives, and in the demonstrative

54.17.1 Means or instrument with active and passive verbs

- pure ablative

54.18 Direct and indirect objects

In addition to functioning as the **subject** of a verb, nouns can act as the **direct object** of the verb, or as the **indirect object** of the verb. In order for a verb to take an object, it must be a **transitive** verb, a verb that expresses an action that acts upon a recipient.

54.18.1 Direct object: function of the accusative case

The noun that receives the action of a verb in the active or middle voice is called the *direct object*. In Latin, the **accusative** case is the normal way to express this role in a clause: the accusative case is enough to show that the verb's action is done to it.

Hercules killed *the eagle* (that was torturing Prometheus).

The eagle is what is being killed, so in Latin it goes into the accusative case: *aquilam* Hercules interfecit

54.18.2 Indirect object: function of the dative case

Some verbs may express actions that also involve a secondary recipient, a person or thing that is affected by or benefits from the action: that noun is acting as the **indirect object**.

One verb that makes it easy to see the role of the indirect object, in both English and Latin, is the verb “to give.” (Latin grammarians in antiquity thought so, too: we have borrowed our term from the Latin *dativus casus*, “the case connected with giving.”) In English, we can express the indirect object either by word order or with a preposition such as “to.”

“Hercules gave him (Philoctetes) his divien arrows.” or “Hercules gave his divine arrows to him.”

In both sentences “arrows” is the direct object of the verb “gave”: the gifts are what is being directly affected by the action of the verb. The indirect object in both sentences is “him” (Philoctetes): as the recipient of the gifts, the action of giving affected Philoctetes in a secondary or indirect way. English expresses that by putting the indirect object before the direct object in the sentence, or with the preposition “to.”

Can you think of other verbs in English that frequently have both a direct and an indirect object expressed with this syntax?

In Latin, the indirect object is expressed with the dative case. Word order can be used for other kinds of emphasis.

Hercules suas sagittas diuinas *ei* donauit

54.19 Prepositions

54.20 Sentence Structures

Translating Latin sentences becomes much easier if you can recognize certain structural patterns that tell us what to expect in a sentence. Key to identifying what structural pattern a sentence follows is the **main verb**. The type of verb that appears in the sentence tells us what other grammatical items we need to fill out the rest of the sentence.

Below you will find a discussion of several very common sentence structures as well as guidelines for how to distinguish them by looking at the verb.

54.20.1 Intransitive Sentences

Intransitive sentences feature a subject and an **intransitive verb**. An intransitive verb is a verb that expresses an action or state of being, but does not act directly upon an object: for example, sneezing, dancing, running, raining, etc. As a result, an intransitive verb (and, thus, an intransitive sentence) does not take a direct object (on which, see Transitive Sentences below).

Below are some examples of intransitive sentences in Latin and English:

- Puella cucurrit. (“The girl ran.”)
- Timent. (“They are frightened.”)

NB: It might be tempting to think that a sentence like “The girl ran three miles” has a direct object. However, “three miles” is the shortened form of “for three miles”, an adverbial phrase that describes the word “ran.” We’ll learn more about phrases that express concepts of space and time in Module 3.

To summarize, intransitive sentences must have a:

- Subject
- Intransitive active verb

54.20.2 Transitive Sentences

Transitive sentences require a **direct object**, in addition to a subject and verb, to complete the meaning of the sentence.

For example, let’s consider the verb *facere* (“to make” in English). If I were to say *agricola fēcit* - “the farmer made”, the sentence would feel incomplete. You would be thinking, “What is he making? Pizza? Cake? A fence?”

Thus, we need to add a **direct object** to tell us what the farmer was making. In English, we would indicate this by putting what the farmer made immediately after the verb (e.g., “the farmer made pizza”). However, because Latin is an *inflected* language whose word order is highly variable, we can’t do this. Rather, Latin indicates that a noun is functioning as a direct object by putting it in the **accusative case**. Thus, the Latin version of the sentence looks like this:

Agricola *pizzam* fēcit.

Head to the noun paradigm charts and adjective paradigm charts to familiarize yourself with the **accusative** endings in the singular and plural of each declension and adjective grouping.

Below are some further examples of transitive sentences with accusative direct objects:

- Pater **filiam** amāvit (“The father loved his daughter.”)
- Filii **matrēs** amant. (“The sons love their mother.”)
- **Agricolam** uxor iuvābat. (“The wife was helping the farmer.”)
- Fortis vir **magnum monstrum et terribilem serpentem** pugnābat. (“The brave man is fighting the great monster and the terrible serpent.”)

Sometimes, you will want to specify the recipient of the action of the verb. For instance, in the sentence “the farmer gave the girl a pizza”, the girl receives the pizza that the farmer gives. Pizza is still the **direct object** - the farmer is giving the pizza (not the girl). In this sentence, the word “girl” is an **indirect object**, the recipient of the action done by the main verb. In Latin, we signal the **indirect object** by using the **dative case**, which we usually translate as “to/for X”. So in Latin “the farmer gave the girl a pizza” looks like this:

- Agricola pizzam **puellae** dedit.

Literally, the sentence is “The farmer gave a pizza **to the girl**.”

Head to the noun paradigm charts and adjective paradigm charts to familiarize yourself with the **dative** endings in the singular and plural of each declension and adjective grouping.

To summarize, transitive sentences must have a:

- Subject
- Active verb
- Direct object in the accusative

And sometimes have an:

- Indirect object in the dative

54.20.3 Passive Sentences

Passive sentences feature a subject and, unsurprisingly, a **passive verb**. Because the subject of a passive verb is being acted upon, passive sentences do not feature a direct object. Below are some examples of simple passive sentences:

- Puella visa est. (“The girl was seen.”)
- Virī captī sunt. (“The men were captured.”)

Sometimes, passive sentences feature a construction known as the **ablative of agent** which tells us who performed the action of the main verb (since the subject is *receiving* the action of the verb, rather than performing it). We can recognize the **ablative of agent** by the preposition *ā/ab* followed by a noun in the **ablative case**. Below are the examples from above with an ablative of agent:

- Puella **ab matre** visa est. (“The girl was seen by her mother.”)
- Virī **ā fēminīs** captī sunt. (“The men were captured by the women.”)

Head to the noun paradigm charts and adjective paradigm charts to familiarize yourself with the **ablative** endings in the singular and plural of each declension and adjective grouping.

Passive sentences can also feature an **indirect object** in the **dative case** as well. For example, we might see a sentence like the following:

- Pizza **puellae** data est. (“The pizza was given to the girl.”)

To summarize, passive sentences must have a:

- Subject
- Passive verb

And sometimes have an:

- An ablative of agent
- Indirect object in the dative

54.20.4 Linking Sentences

Linking sentences, which we have already met, require a subject, **linking verb**, and **predicate nominative** which matches the subject in **number** and **case** and, in the case of adjectives as predicate nominatives, **gender**. The most common linking verb in English and Latin is “to be” (*sum, esse, fui, futurus*), though there are other linking verbs we will see throughout the semester. Below are some examples of linking sentences:

- Vir pater est. (“The man is a father.”)

- Puerī magnī et fortēs sunt. (“The boys are strong and brave.”)

In each of the sentences above, note which nominatives are the subjects (*vir*, *puerī*) and which nominatives are the predicate nominatives (*pater*, *magnī* [et] *fortēs*).

To summarize, linking sentences must have a:

- Subject
- Linking verb *-Predicate nominative

54.20.5 Tips for Determining Sentence Structure

The most important thing to do when determining sentence structure is to look at the **main verb**. If the verb is passive, we know that the sentence structure is going to be **passive**; if the verb is a linking verb (i.e. a form of *sum*), then we know the sentence structure is going to be **linking**. It is more difficult to differentiate between transitive and intransitive verbs. While some Latin verbs are used only transitively (verbs like “to carry”) and or only intransitively (verbs like “to rain”), a large number of verbs can be used both transitively or intransitively. In these cases, you will want to see if there is a direct object in the accusative case (transitive) or not (intransitive).

55 Richer sentences

In Unit 1, we learned how verbs and nouns conjugate and decline to create meaning and structure in Latin sentences. In Unit 2, we will continue to practice these skills in the context of more complicated syntax, with a particular focus on the different ways that Latin expresses time and place.

We will begin by learning about prepositional phrases and how they can add meaning to Latin verbal expressions. We will build directly on this by looking how Latin uses these and other constructions to express place and time

We will then move on to look at how we can convey different time relations through verbal tense. We will learn about the present and the future tense. After learning these tenses, we will have gained experience working with all four principal parts of a Latin verb!

55.1 Unit Objectives

By the end of this unit, you will be able to:

- Identify expressions of time using the accusative and ablative case
- Identify all persons of the present, future, imperfect, and perfect indicative in both active and passive voices
- Use principal parts to form present, future, imperfect and perfect forms of verbs
- Read more complex Latin sentences

56 Subordination

In Units 1 and 2, we learned how verbs and nouns conjugate and decline to create meaning and structure in Latin sentences, as well as how to express ideas like time and place using prepositional phrases. In Unit 3, we will build on this foundation and begin to read more complex sentences.

We will begin this unit with a consideration of subordination in Latin. We will learn about dependent clauses, focusing in particular on temporal clauses. In our discussion of dependent clauses, we will meet the subjunctive mood for the first time and learn how to form its imperfect and pluperfect tense. In doing so, we will begin to discuss what the subjunctive mood signifies in Latin, a conversation that we will continue for much of the next two semesters.

We will then move on to consider the place of the infinitive in Latin syntax. We will learn the present and perfect forms of the infinitive and discuss three usages of the infinitive: 1) as the subject of a Latin sentence; 2) as a word that complete the meaning of certain verbs; 3) as the main verb in an indirect statement (paraphrases but not quotations of what someone else has said).

56.1 Unit Objectives

By the end of this unit, you will be able to:

- Explain the difference between a dependent and independent clauses
- Identify temporal clauses
- Recognize and form the imperfect and pluperfect tenses of the subjunctive
- Recognize and form different tenses of *possum*
- Recognize and form different tense-voice combinations of the infinitive
- Identify different uses of the infinitive
- Recognize and formulate an indirect statement in Latin

57 Further subordination

In Unit 1 and 2, we learned how verbs and nouns conjugate and decline to create meaning and structure in Latin sentences, as well as how to express ideas like time and place using prepositional phrases and we built on this foundation and begin to read more complex sentences (cum clauses and indirect statements) in Unit 3. Unit 4 will introduce you to some new verbal forms that appear commonly in the Latin language.

We will start by learning the conjugation of several very common irregular verbs including *sum*, *possum*, *volo*, *nolo*, *eo*, and *fero*. This will not only help us to recognize these verbs when they show up in Latin texts, but also provide an opportunity to review the fundamentals of verb formation. We will also learn about deponent and semi-deponent verbs, a special class of verbs that are passive in form but active in meaning. In addition to learning these new forms, we will also learn two more tenses of the subjunctive, the present and perfect.

We will make use of these verbal forms as continue to practice translating complex sentences. We will continue to focus on translating indirect statements as well as temporal clauses with and without the subjunctive.

57.1 Unit Objectives

By the end of this unit, you will be able to:

Recognize and form a number of very common irregular verbs (*sum*, *possum*, *volo*, *nolo*, *eo*, and *fero*) Recognize and form deponent and semi-deponent verbs Recognize and form the present and perfect tenses of the subjunctive Recognize and translate temporal clauses Recognize and translate indirect statements

58 Some less frequent forms

We will begin unit 5 by going over the declension of nouns and adjectives from the first three declensions as well as the pronouns that we learned last semester. We will then move on to a full scale review of the Latin verbal forms that we met last semester. As we review these forms, we will also practice and review different grammatical structures that we saw last semester.

In addition to a review of old forms, we will meet some new ones to fill out our knowledge of Latin morphology. In terms of substantive forms, we will learn the fourth and fifth declension, two relatively obscure declensions that have some important members. We will also learn some verbal forms as well, including the first and second-person and the pluperfect indicative.

58.1 Objectives

By the end of Unit 5, you will be able to:

- Recognize and produce all substantive inflection patterns and analyze their grammatical function in sentences
- Recognize and produce (almost) all verbal inflection patterns and analyze their grammatical function in sentences
- Feel confident about the different grammatical structures that we met last semester

59 Relative clauses, participles, and gerunds

In Unit 1, we spent some time reviewing key concepts from last semester. In Unit 2, we will learn about different ways in which nouns, adjectives, and pronouns can be used to add further color to a Latin sentence.

We will begin by learning about relative clauses, a type of dependent clause that provides further information about a previous noun. We will then move on to learn about participles, a type of verbal adjective, that provides more information about the actions and behaviors of a noun within a sentence. We will conclude by looking at gerunds (verbal nouns) and gerundives (verbal adjectives) and the different constructions that they belong to.

Objectives

By the end of Unit 2, you will be able to:

Recognize relative clauses and analyze their grammatical function in sentences Recognize participles and understand how they add complexity to sentences Recognize gerunds and gerundives and identify the way that they are being used in sentences

6o Dependent clauses with the subjunctive

TBA

61 Reference

62 Regular Verbs - Paradigms

- TOC {;toc}

Paradigm Verbs:

- 1st Conjugation: *amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus* - to love
 - 2nd Conjugation: *moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus* - to warn, advise
 - 3rd Conjugation: *regō, regere, rexī, rectus* - to rule
 - 3rd -iō Conjugation: *capiō, capere, cēpī, captus* - to take, seize
 - 4th Conjugation: *audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus* - to hear
-

62.1 Indicative - Active

62.1.1 Present Active Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amō	moneō	regō	capiō	audiō
2nd sg.	amās	monēs	regis	capis	audīs
3rd sg.	amat	monet	regit	capit	audit
1st pl.	amāmus	monēmus	regimus	capimus	audīmus
2nd pl.	amātis	monētis	regitis	capitis	audītis
3rd pl.	amant	monent	regunt	capiunt	audiunt

62.1.2 Imperfect Active Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amābam	monēbam	regēbam	capiēbam	audiēbam
2nd sg.	amābās	monēbās	regēbās	capiēbās	audiēbās
3rd sg.	amābat	monēbat	regēbat	capiēbat	audiēbat
1st pl.	amābāmus	monēbāmus	regēbāmus	capiēbāmus	audiēbāmus
2nd pl.	amābātis	monēbātis	regēbātis	capiēbātis	audiēbātis
3rd pl.	amābant	monēbant	regēbant	capiēbant	audiēbant

62.1.3 Future Active Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amābō	monēbō	regam	capiam	audiam
2nd sg.	amābis	monēbis	regēs	capiēs	audiēs
3rd sg.	amābit	monēbit	reget	capiet	audiet
1st pl.	amābimus	monēbimus	regēmus	capiēmus	audiēmus
2nd pl.	amābitis	monēbitis	regētis	capiētis	audiētis
3rd pl.	amābunt	monēbunt	regent	capient	audient

62.1.4 Perfect Active Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amāvī	monuī	rexī	cēpī	audīvī
2nd sg.	amāvistī	monuistī	rexisī	cēpistī	audivistī
3rd sg.	amāvit	monuit	rexit	cēpit	audivit
1st pl.	amāvimus	monuimus	reximus	cēpimus	audivimus
2nd pl.	amāvistis	monuistis	rexisitis	cēpistis	audivistis
3rd pl.	amāvērunt	monuērunt	rexērunt	cēpērunt	audivērunt

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
3rd pl. alt.	amāvēre	monuēre	rexēre	cēpēre	audivēre

62.1.5 Pluperfect Active Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amāveram	monueram	rexeram	cēperam	audiveram
2nd sg.	amāverās	monuerās	rexerās	cēperās	audiverās
3rd sg.	amāverat	monuerat	rexerat	cēperat	audiverat
1st pl.	amāverāmus	monuerāmus	rexerāmus	cēperāmus	audiverāmus
2nd pl.	amāverātis	monuerātis	rexerātis	cēperātis	audiverātis
3rd pl.	amāverant	monuerant	rexerant	cēperant	audiverant

62.1.6 Future Perfect Active Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amāverō	monuerō	rexerō	cēperō	audiverō
2nd sg.	amāveris	monueris	rexeris	cēperis	audiveris
3rd sg.	amāverit	monuerit	rexerit	cēperit	audiverit
1st pl.	amāverimus	monuerimus	rexerimus	cēperimus	audiverimus
2nd pl.	amāveritis	monueritis	rexeritis	cēperitis	audiveritis
3rd pl.	amāverint	monuerint	rexerint	cēperint	audiverint

62.2 Indicative - Passive

62.2.1 Present Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amor	moneor	regor	capior	audior
2nd sg.	amāris	monēris	regeris	caperis	audīris
3rd sg.	amātur	monētur	regitur	capitur	audītur
1st pl.	amāmur	monēmur	regimur	capimur	audīmur
2nd pl.	amāminī	monēminī	regiminī	capiminī	audīminī
3rd pl.	amantur	monentur	reguntur	capiuntur	audiuntur

62.2.2 Imperfect Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amābar	monēbar	regēbar	capiēbar	audiēbar
2nd sg.	amābāris	monēbāris	regēbāris	capiēbāris	audiēbāris
3rd sg.	amābātur	monēbātur	regēbātur	capiēbātur	audiēbātur
1st pl.	amābāmur	monēbāmur	regēbāmur	capiēbāmur	audiēbāmur
2nd pl.	amābāminī	monēbāminī	regēbāminī	capiēbāminī	audiēbāminī
3rd pl.	amābantur	monēbantur	regēbantur	capiēbantur	audiēbantur

62.2.3 Future Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amābor	monēbor	regar	capiar	audiar
2nd sg.	amāberis	monēberis	regēris	capiēris	audiēris
3rd sg.	amābitur	monēbitur	regētur	capiētur	audiētur
1st pl.	amābimur	monēbimur	regēmur	capiēmur	audiēmur
2nd pl.	amābiminī	monēbiminī	regēminī	capiēminī	audiēminī
3rd pl.	amābuntur	monēbuntur	regentur	capientur	audientur

62.2.4 Perfect Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amātus, -a, -um sum	monitus, -a, -um sum	rectus, -a, -um sum	captus, -a, -um sum	auditus, -a, -um sum
2nd sg.	amātus, -a, -um es	monitus, -a, -um es	rectus, -a, -um es	captus, -a, -um es	auditus, -a, -um es
3rd sg.	amātus, -a, -um est	monitus, -a, -um est	rectus, -a, -um est	captus, -a, -um est	auditus, -a, -um est
1st pl.	amātī, -ae, -a sumus	monitī, -ae, -a sumus	rectī, -ae, -a sumus	captī, -ae, -a sumus	audītī, -ae, -a sumus
2nd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a estis	monitī, -ae, -a estis	rectī, -ae, -a estis	captī, -ae, -a estis	audītī, -ae, -a estis
3rd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a sunt	monitī, -ae, -a sunt	rectī, -ae, -a sunt	captī, -ae, -a sunt	audītī, -ae, -a sunt

62.2.5 Pluperfect Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amātus, -a, -um eram	monitus, -a, -um eram	rectus, -a, -um eram	captus, -a, -um eram	auditus, -a, -um eram
2nd sg.	amātus, -a, -um erās	monitus, -a, -um erās	rectus, -a, -um erās	captus, -a, -um erās	auditus, -a, -um erās
3rd sg.	amātus, -a, -um erat	monitus, -a, -um erat	rectus, -a, -um erat	captus, -a, -um erat	auditus, -a, -um erat
1st pl.	amātī, -ae, -a erāmus	monitī, -ae, -a erāmus	rectī, -ae, -a erāmus	captī, -ae, -a erāmus	audītī, -ae, -a erāmus
2nd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a erātis	monitī, -ae, -a erātis	rectī, -ae, -a erātis	captī, -ae, -a erātis	audītī, -ae, -a erātis
3rd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a erant	monitī, -ae, -a erant	rectī, -ae, -a erant	captī, -ae, -a erant	audītī, -ae, -a erant

62.2.6 Future Perfect Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amātus, -a, -um erō	monitus, -a, -um erō	rectus, -a, -um erō	captus, -a, -um erō	auditus, -a, -um erō
2nd sg.	amātus, -a, -um eris	monitus, -a, -um eris	rectus, -a, -um eris	captus, -a, -um eris	auditus, -a, -um eris
3rd sg.	amātus, -a, -um erit	monitus, -a, -um erit	rectus, -a, -um erit	captus, -a, -um erit	auditus, -a, -um erit
1st pl.	amātī, -ae, -a erimus	monitī, -ae, -a erimus	rectī, -ae, -a erimus	captī, -ae, -a erimus	audītī, -ae, -a erimus
2nd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a eritis	monitī, -ae, -a eritis	rectī, -ae, -a eritis	captī, -ae, -a eritis	audītī, -ae, -a eritis
3rd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a erunt	monitī, -ae, -a erunt	rectī, -ae, -a erunt	captī, -ae, -a erunt	audītī, -ae, -a erunt

62.3 Subjunctive - Active

62.3.1 Present Active Subjunctive

Stem vowel changes are included in the bolded endings.

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	am em	mone am	reg am	capi am	audi am
2nd sg.	amē s	moneā s	regā s	capiā s	audiā s
3rd sg.	am et	moneat	regat	capiat	audiat
1st pl.	amē mus	moneā mus	regā mus	capiā mus	audiā mus
2nd pl.	amē tis	moneā tis	regā tis	capiā tis	audiā tis
3rd pl.	am ent	moneant	regant	capiant	audiant

62.3.2 Imperfect Active Subjunctive

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amārem	monērem	regerem	caperem	audīrem
2nd sg.	amārēs	monērēs	regerēs	caperēs	audīrēs
3rd sg.	amāret	monēret	regeret	caperet	audīret
1st pl.	amārēmus	monērēmus	regerēmus	caperēmus	audīrēmus
2nd pl.	amārētis	monērētis	regerētis	caperētis	audīrētis
3rd pl.	amārent	monērent	regerent	caperent	audīrent

62.3.3 Perfect Active Subjunctive

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amāverim	monuerim	rexerim	cēperim	audīverim
2nd sg.	amāverīs	monuerīs	rexerīs	cēperīs	audīverīs
3rd sg.	amāverit	monuerit	rexerit	cēperit	audīverit
1st pl.	amāverīmus	monuerīmus	rexerīmus	cēperīmus	audīverīmus
2nd pl.	amāverītis	monuerītis	rexerītis	cēperītis	audīverītis
3rd pl.	amāverint	monuerint	rexerint	cēperint	audīverint

62.3.4 Pluperfect Active Subjunctive

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amāvissem	monuisssem	rexissem	cēpisssem	audīvissem
2nd sg.	amāvissēs	monuissēs	rexissēs	cēpissēs	audīvissēs
3rd sg.	amāvisset	monuisset	rexisset	cēpisset	audīvisset
1st pl.	amāvissēmus	monuissēmus	rexissēmus	cēpissēmus	audīvissēmus
2nd pl.	amāvissētis	monuissētis	rexissētis	cēpissētis	audīvissētis

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
3rd pl.	amāvissent	monuissent	rexissent	cēpissent	audīvissent

62.4 Subjunctive - Passive

62.4.1 Present Passive Subjunctive

Stem vowel changes are included in the bolded endings.

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amer	monear	regar	capiar	audiar
2nd sg.	amēris	moneāris	regāris	capiāris	audiāris
3rd sg.	amētur	moneātur	regātur	capiātur	audiātur
1st pl.	amēmur	moneāmur	regāmur	capiāmur	audiāmur
2nd pl.	amēmini	moneāmini	regāmini	capiāmini	audiāmini
3rd pl.	amentur	moneantur	regantur	capiantur	audiantur

62.4.2 Imperfect Passive Subjunctive

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amārer	monērer	regerer	caperer	audīrer
2nd sg.	amārēris	monērē*ris**	regerēris	caperēris	audīrēris
3rd sg.	amārētur	monērētur	regerētur	caperētur	audīrētur
1st pl.	amārēmur	monērēmur	regerēmur	caperēmur	audīrēmur
2nd pl.	amārēmini	monērēmini	regerēmini	caperēmini	audīrēmini
3rd pl.	amārentur	monērentur	regerentur	caperentur	audīrentur

62.4.3 Perfect Passive Subjunctive

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amātus, -a, -um sim	monitus, -a, -um sim	rectus, -a, -um sim	captus, -a, -um sim	auditus, -a, -um sim
2nd sg.	amātus, -a, -um sīs	monitus, -a, -um sīs	rectus, -a, -um sīs	captus, -a, -um sīs	auditus, -a, -um sīs
3rd sg.	amātus, -a, -um sit	monitus, -a, -um sit	rectus, -a, -um sit	captus, -a, -um sit	auditus, -a, -um sit
1st pl.	amātī, -ae, -a sīmus	monitī, -ae, -a sīmus	rectī, -ae, -a sīmus	captī, -ae, -a sīmus	audītī, -ae, -a sīmus
2nd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a sītis	monitī, -ae, -a sītis	rectī, -ae, -a sītis	captī, -ae, -a sītis	audītī, -ae, -a sītis
3rd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a sint	monitī, -ae, -a sint	rectī, -ae, -a sint	captī, -ae, -a sint	audītī, -ae, -a sint

62.4.4 Pluperfect Passive Subjunctive

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amātus, -a, -um essem	monitus, -a, -um essem	rectus, -a, -um essem	captus, -a, -um essem	auditus, -a, -um essem
2nd sg.	amātus, -a, -um essēs	monitus, -a, -um essēs	rectus, -a, -um essēs	captus, -a, -um essēs	auditus, -a, -um essēs
3rd sg.	amātus, -a, -um esset	monitus, -a, -um esset	rectus, -a, -um esset	captus, -a, -um esset	auditus, -a, -um esset
1st pl.	amātī, -ae, -a essēmus	monitī, -ae, -a essēmus	rectī, -ae, -a essēmus	captī, -ae, -a essēmus	audītī, -ae, -a essēmus
2nd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a essētis	monitī, -ae, -a essētis	rectī, -ae, -a essētis	captī, -ae, -a essētis	audītī, -ae, -a essētis
3rd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a essent	monitī, -ae, -a essent	rectī, -ae, -a essent	captī, -ae, -a essent	audītī, -ae, -a essent

62.5 Infinitives

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
Pres. Act.	amāre	monēre	regere	capere	audire
Pres. Pass.	amārī	monērī	regī	capī	audīrī
Perf. Act.	amāvisse	monuisse	rexisse	cēpisse	audīvisse
Perf. Pass.	amātus esse	monitus esse	rectus esse	captus esse	audītus esse
Fut. Act.	amātūrus esse	monitūrus esse	rectūrus esse	captūrus esse	audītūrus esse
Fut. Pass.	amātum irī	monitum irī	rectum irī	captum irī	audītum irī

62.6 Gerunds and Gerundives

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
Gerund	amandum	monendum	regendum	capiendum	audiendum
Gerundive	amandus, -a, -um	monendus, -a, -um	regendus, -a, -um	capiendus, -a, -um	audiendus, -a, -um

63 Deponent Verbs - Paradigms

- TOC {;toc}

Paradigm Verbs:

- 1st Conjugation: *hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum* - to exhort, encourage
 - 2nd Conjugation: *vereor, verērī, veritus sum* - to fear
 - 3rd Conjugation: *loquor, loquī, locutus sum* - to speak
 - 3rd -iō Conjugation: *morior, morī, mortuus sum* - to die
 - 4th Conjugation: *potior, potīrī, potītus sum* - to gain possession of
-

63.1 Indicative - Passive (Deponent)

63.1.1 Present Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	hortor	vereor	loquor	morior	potior
2nd sg.	hortāris	verēris	loqueris	moreris	potīris
3rd sg.	hortātur	verētur	loquitur	moritur	potītur
1st pl.	hortāmur	verēmur	loquimur	morimur	potīmur
2nd pl.	hortāminī	verēminī	loquiminī	moriminī	potīminī
3rd pl.	hortantur	verentur	loquuntur	moriuntur	potiuntur

63.1.2 Imperfect Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	hortābar	verēbar	loquēbar	moriēbar	potiēbar
2nd sg.	hortābāris	verēbāris	loquēbāris	moriēbāris	potiēbāris
3rd sg.	hortābātur	verēbātur	loquēbātur	moriēbātur	potiēbātur
1st pl.	hortābāmur	verēbāmur	loquēbāmur	moriēbāmur	potiēbāmur
2nd pl.	hortābāminī	verēbāminī	loquēbāminī	moriēbāminī	potiēbāminī
3rd pl.	hortābantur	verēbantur	loquēbantur	moriēbantur	potiēbantur

63.1.3 Future Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	hortābor	verēbor	loquar	moriar	potiar
2nd sg.	hortāberis	verēberis	loquēris	moriēris	potiēris
3rd sg.	hortābitur	verēbitur	loquētur	moriētur	potiētur
1st pl.	hortābimur	verēbimur	loquēmur	moriēmur	potiēmur
2nd pl.	hortābiminī	verēbiminī	loquēminī	moriēminī	potiēminī
3rd pl.	hortābuntur	verēbuntur	loquentur	morientur	potientur

63.1.4 Perfect Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	hortātus, -a, -um sum	veritus, -a, -um sum	locutus, -a, -um sum	mortuus, -a, -um sum	potītus, -a, -um sum
2nd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um es	veritus, -a, -um es	locutus, -a, -um es	mortuus, -a, -um es	potītus, -a, -um es
3rd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um est	veritus, -a, -um est	locutus, -a, -um est	mortuus, -a, -um est	potītus, -a, -um est

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a sumus	veritī, -ae, -a sumus	locutī, -ae, -a sumus	mortuī, -ae, -a sumus	potītī, -ae, -a sumus
2nd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a estis	veritī, -ae, -a estis	locutī, -ae, -a estis	mortuī, -ae, -a estis	potītī, -ae, -a estis
3rd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a sunt	veritī, -ae, -a sunt	locutī, -ae, -a sunt	mortuī, -ae, -a sunt	potītī, -ae, -a sunt

63.1.5 Pluperfect Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	hortātus, -a, -um eram	veritus, -a, -um eram	locutus, -a, -um eram	mortuus, -a, -um eram	potītus, -a, -um eram
2nd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um erās	veritus, -a, -um erās	locutus, -a, -um erās	mortuus, -a, -um erās	potītus, -a, -um erās
3rd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um erat	veritus, -a, -um erat	locutus, -a, -um erat	mortuus, -a, -um erat	potītus, -a, -um erat
1st pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a erāmus	veritī, -ae, -a erāmus	locutī, -ae, -a erāmus	mortuī, -ae, -a erāmus	potītī, -ae, -a erāmus
2nd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a erātis	veritī, -ae, -a erātis	locutī, -ae, -a erātis	mortuī, -ae, -a erātis	potītī, -ae, -a erātis
3rd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a erant	veritī, -ae, -a erant	locutī, -ae, -a erant	mortuī, -ae, -a erant	potītī, -ae, -a erant

63.1.6 Future Perfect Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	hortātus, -a, -um erō	veritus, -a, -um erō	locutus, -a, -um erō	mortuus, -a, -um erō	potītus, -a, -um erō
2nd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um eris	veritus, -a, -um eris	locutus, -a, -um eris	mortuus, -a, -um eris	potītus, -a, -um eris

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
3rd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um erit	veritus, -a, -um erit	locutus, -a, -um erit	mortuus, -a, -um erit	potītus, -a, -um erit
1st pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a erimus	veritī, -ae, -a erimus	locutī, -ae, -a erimus	mortuī, -ae, -a erimus	potītī, -ae, -a erimus
2nd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a eritis	veritī, -ae, -a eritis	locutī, -ae, -a eritis	mortuī, -ae, -a eritis	potītī, -ae, -a eritis
3rd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a erunt	veritī, -ae, -a erunt	locutī, -ae, -a erunt	mortuī, -ae, -a erunt	potītī, -ae, -a erunt

63.2 Subjunctive - Passive (Deponent)

63.2.1 Present Passive Subjunctive

Stem vowel changes are included in the bolded endings.

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	horter	verear	loquar	moriar	potiar
2nd sg.	hortēris	vereāris	loquāris	moriāris	potiāris
3rd sg.	hortētur	vereātur	loquātur	moriātur	potiātur
1st pl.	hortēmur	vereāmur	loquāmur	moriāmur	potiāmur
2nd pl.	hortēminī	vereāminī	loquāminī	moriāminī	potiāminī
3rd pl.	hortentur	vereantur	loquantur	morianur	potiantur

63.2.2 Imperfect Passive Subjunctive

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	hortārer	verērer	loquerer	morerer	potīrer

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
2nd sg.	hortārēris	verērēris	loquerēris	morerēris	potirēris
3rd sg.	hortārētur	verērētur	loquerētur	morerētur	potirētur
1st pl.	hortārēmur	verērēmur	loquerēmur	morerēmur	potirēmur
2nd pl.	hortārēmini	verērēmini	loquerēmini	morerēmini	potirēmini
3rd pl.	hortārentur	verērentur	loquerentur	morerentur	potirentur

63.2.3 Perfect Passive Subjunctive

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	hortātus, -a, -um sim	veritus, -a, -um sim	locutus, -a, -um sim	mortuus, -a, -um sim	potītus, -a, -um sim
2nd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um sis	veritus, -a, -um sis	locutus, -a, -um sis	mortuus, -a, -um sis	potītus, -a, -um sis
3rd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um sit	veritus, -a, -um sit	locutus, -a, -um sit	mortuus, -a, -um sit	potītus, -a, -um sit
1st pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a sīmus	veritī, -ae, -a sīmus	locutī, -ae, -a sīmus	mortuī, -ae, -a sīmus	potītī, -ae, -a sīmus
2nd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a sītis	veritī, -ae, -a sītis	locutī, -ae, -a sītis	mortuī, -ae, -a sītis	potītī, -ae, -a sītis
3rd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a sint	veritī, -ae, -a sint	locutī, -ae, -a sint	mortuī, -ae, -a sint	potītī, -ae, -a sint

63.2.4 Pluperfect Passive Subjunctive

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	hortātus, -a, -um essem	veritus, -a, -um essem	locutus, -a, -um essem	mortuus, -a, -um essem	potītus, -a, -um essem
2nd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um essēs	veritus, -a, -um essēs	locutus, -a, -um essēs	mortuus, -a, -um essēs	potītus, -a, -um essēs

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
3rd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um esset	veritus, -a, -um esset	locutus, -a, -um esset	mortuus, -a, -um esset	potītus, -a, -um esset
1st pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a essēmus	veritī, -ae, -a essēmus	locutī, -ae, -a essēmus	mortuī, -ae, -a essēmus	potītī, -ae, -a essēmus
2nd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a essētis	veritī, -ae, -a essētis	locutī, -ae, -a essētis	mortuī, -ae, -a essētis	potītī, -ae, -a essētis
3rd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a essent	veritī, -ae, -a essent	locutī, -ae, -a essent	mortuī, -ae, -a essent	potītī, -ae, -a essent

63.3 Infinitives

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
Pres. Pass.	hortārī	verērī	loquī	morī	potīrī
Perf. Pass.	hortātus esse	veritus esse	locutus esse	mortuus esse	potītus esse
Fut. Act.	hortātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	locutūrus esse	mortuūrus esse	potītūrus esse

63.4 Gerunds and Gerundives

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
Gerund	hortandum	verendum	loquendum	moriendum	potiendum
Gerundive	hortandus, -a, -um	verendus, -a, -um	loquendus, -a, -um	moriendus, -a, -um	potiendus, -a, -um

64 Nouns - Paradigms

· TOC {;toc}

64.1 First Declension

64.1.1 *puella, puellae*, f. - girl

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	puella	puellae
Genitive	puellae	puellārum
Dative	puellae	puellis
Accusative	puellam	puellās
Ablative	puellā	puellis

64.2 Second Declension Masculine

64.2.1 *maritus, maritī*, m. - husband

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	maritus	maritī
Genitive	maritī	maritōrum

Case	Singular	Plural
Dative	maritō	maritīs
Accusative	maritum	maritōs
Ablative	maritō	maritīs

64.2.2 *ager, agrī*, m. - field

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	ager	agrī
Genitive	agrī	agrōrum
Dative	agrō	agrīs
Accusative	agrum	agrōs
Ablative	agrō	agrīs

64.3 Second Declension Neuter

64.3.1 *exemplum, exemplī*, n. - example

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	exemplum	exempla
Genitive	exemplī	exemplōrum
Dative	exemplō	exemplīs
Accusative	exemplum	exempla
Ablative	exemplō	exemplīs

64.4 Third Declension Masculine/Feminine

64.4.1 *mater, matris*, f. - mother

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	<i>māter</i> *	<i>mātrēs</i>
Genitive	<i>mātris</i>	<i>mātrum</i>
Dative	<i>mātrī</i>	<i>mātribus</i>
Accusative	<i>mātre</i> m	<i>mātrēs</i>
Ablative	<i>mātre</i>	<i>mātribus</i>

* Nominative forms of third declension nouns are highly variable; there is no one set or common ending.

64.5 Third Declension Masculine/Feminine i-stem

64.5.1 *urbs, urbis*, f. - city

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	<i>urbs</i> *	<i>urbēs</i>
Genitive	<i>urbis</i>	<i>urbium</i> **
Dative	<i>urbī</i>	<i>urbibus</i>
Accusative	<i>urbem</i>	<i>urbēs</i>
Ablative	<i>urbe</i>	<i>urbibus</i>

* Nominative forms of third declension nouns are highly variable; there is no one set or common ending. ** Note the extra i in the genitive plural ending: *-ium*, rather than simply *-um*.

64.6 Third Declension Neuter

64.6.1 *nōmen, nōminis*, n. - name

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	nōmen*	nōmina
Genitive	nōminis	nōminum
Dative	nōminī	nōminibus
Accusative	nōmen**	nōmina**
Ablative	nōmine	nōminibus

* Nominative forms of third declension nouns are highly variable; there is no one set or common ending. ** The accusative forms of all **neuter** nouns, adjectives, and pronouns exactly match their nominative counterparts within the same number (e.g., neuter accusative singular = neuter nominative singular).

64.7 Third Declension Neuter i-stem

64.7.1 *mare, maris*, n. - sea

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	mare*	maria***
Genitive	maris	marium***
Dative	marī	maribus
Accusative	mare**	maria***
Ablative	marī***	maribus

* Nominative forms of third declension nouns are highly variable; there is no one set or common ending. ** The accusative forms of all **neuter** nouns, adjectives, and pronouns exactly match their nominative counterparts within the same number (e.g., neuter accusative singular = neuter nominative singular). *** Note the replacement of the normal ablative singular ending -e with -ī and the extra i in the endings of the nominative, genitive, and accusative plurals.

64.8 Fourth Declension Masculine/Feminine

64.8.1 *manus, manūs, f.* - hand

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	<i>manus</i>	<i>manūs</i>
Genitive	<i>manūs</i>	<i>manuum</i>
Dative	<i>manūi</i>	<i>manibus</i>
Accusative	<i>manum</i>	<i>manūs</i>
Ablative	<i>manū</i>	<i>manibus</i>

64.9 Fourth Declension Neuter

64.9.1 *genū, genūs, n.* - knee

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	<i>genū</i>	<i>genua</i>
Genitive	<i>genūs</i>	<i>genuum</i>
Dative	<i>genū</i>	<i>genibus</i>
Accusative	<i>genū</i>	<i>genua</i>
Ablative	<i>genū</i>	<i>genibus</i>

64.10 Fifth Declension Masculine/Feminine

64.10.1 *rēs, reī*, f. - thing, matter, situation, affair

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	<i>rēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>
Genitive	<i>reī</i>	<i>rērum</i>
Dative	<i>reī</i>	<i>rēbus</i>
Accusative	<i>rem</i>	<i>rēs</i>
Ablative	<i>rē</i>	<i>rēbus</i>

64.10.2 *diēs, diēī*, m. - day

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	<i>diēs</i>	<i>diēs</i>
Genitive	<i>diēī</i>	<i>diērum</i>
Dative	<i>diēī</i>	<i>diēbus</i>
Accusative	<i>diem</i>	<i>diēs</i>
Ablative	<i>diē</i>	<i>diēbus</i>

65 Adjectives - Paradigms

· TOC {;toc}

65.1 2-1-2 adjectives

65.1.1 *bonus, bona, bonum* - good

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	bonus	bona	bonum
Genitive	bonī	bonae	bonī
Dative	bonō	bonae	bonō
Accusative	bonum	bonam	bonum
Ablative	bonō	bonā	bonō

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	bonī	bonae	bona
Genitive	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
Dative	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Accusative	bonōs	bonās	bona
Ablative	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

65.1.2 *pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum* - beautiful, handsome

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
Genitive	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī
Dative	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
Accusative	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum
Ablative	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
Genitive	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
Dative	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs
Accusative	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
Ablative	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs

65.2 2-1-2 - īus adjectives

65.2.1 *nullus, nulla, nullum* - no, none

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	nullus*	nulla	nullum**
Genitive	nullīus	nullīus	nullīus
Dative	nullī	nullī	nullī

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Accusative	nullum	nullam	nullum
Ablative	nullō	nullā	nullō

* Some masculine nominative singulars of -īus adjectives end in -r (e.g., *alter*, *altera*, *alterum*). ** Some neuter nominative singulars of -īus adjectives end in -d (e.g., *alius*, *alia*, *aliud*).

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	nullī	nullae	nulla
Genitive	nullōrum	nullārum	nullōrum
Dative	nullīs	nullīs	nullīs
Accusative	nullōs	nullās	nulla
Ablative	nullīs	nullīs	nullīs

65.3 Three-Termination Adjectives

65.3.1 *ācer*, *ācris*, *ācre* - keen, sharp

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	<i>ācer</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācre</i>
Genitive	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>
Dative	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>
Accusative	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācre</i>
Ablative	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Genitive	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
Dative	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Accusative	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Ablative	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

65.4 Two-Termination Adjectives**65.4.1 *fortis, forte* - strong, brave****Singular**

Case	M./F.	Neuter
Nominative	fortis	forte
Genitive	fortis	fortis
Dative	fortī	fortī
Accusative	fortem	forte
Ablative	fortī	fortī

Plural

Case	M./F.	Neuter
Nominative	fortēs	fortia
Genitive	fortium	fortium
Dative	fortibus	fortibus
Accusative	fortēs	fortia

Case	M./F.	Neuter
Ablative	fortibus	fortibus

65.5 One-Termination Adjectives

65.5.1 *sapiēns, sapientis* - wise

Singular

Case	M./F.	Neuter
Nominative	sapiēns	sapiēns
Genitive	sapientis	sapientis
Dative	sapientī	sapientī
Accusative	sapientem	sapiēns*
Ablative	sapientī	sapientī

* The accusative forms of all **neuter** nouns, adjectives, and pronouns exactly match their nominative counterparts within the same number (e.g., neuter accusative singular = neuter nominative singular).

Plural

Case	M./F.	Neuter
Nominative	sapientēs	sapientia
Genitive	sapientium	sapientium
Dative	sapientibus	sapientibus
Accusative	sapientēs	sapientia
Ablative	sapientibus	sapientibus

65.6 Interrogative

65.6.1 *quī, quae, quod* - which? what?

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	quī	quae	quod
Genitive	cuius	cuius	cuius
Dative	cui	cui	cui
Accusative	quem	quam	quod
Ablative	quō	quā	quō

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	quī	quae	quae
Genitive	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dative	quibus	quibus	quibus
Accusative	quōs	quās	quae
Ablative	quibus	quibus	quibus

65.7 Declinable Numerals

65.7.1 *ūnus, -a, -um* - one

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	ūnus	ūna	ūnum
Genitive	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Dative	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī
Accusative	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum
Ablative	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō

65.7.2 *duo, duae, duo* - two

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	duo	duae	duo
Genitive	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
Dative	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
Accusative	duōs	duās	duo
Ablative	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

65.7.3 *trēs, tria* - three

Case	M./F.	Neuter
Nominative	trēs	tria
Genitive	trium	trium
Dative	tribus	tribus
Accusative	trēs	tria
Ablative	tribus	tribus

66 Irregular Verbs - Paradigms

- TOC {;toc}

Paradigm Verbs:

- sum, esse, fui, futūrus - to be
 - eō, īre, īvī/īi, ītus - to go
 - ferō, ferre, tūlī, lātus - to bear, carry
 - volō, velle, voluī - to want, wish
 - nōlō, nolle, nolui - not to want
 - mālō, malle, maluī - to prefer
-

66.1 Indicative - Active

66.1.1 Present Active Indicative

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
2nd sg.	es	īs	fers	vīs	nōn vīs	māvis
3rd sg.	est	it	fert	vult	nōn vult	māvult
1st pl.	sumus	īmus	ferimus	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
2nd pl.	estis	ītis	fertis	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
3rd pl.	sunt	eunt	ferunt	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt

66.1.2 Imperfect Active Indicative

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	eram	ībam	ferēbam	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
2nd sg.	erās	ībās	ferēbās	volēbās	nōlēbās	mālēbās
3rd sg.	erat	ībat	ferēbat	volēbat	nōlēbat	mālēbat
1st pl.	erāmus	ībāmus	ferēbāmus	volēbāmus	nōlēbāmus	mālēbāmus
2nd pl.	erātis	ībātis	ferēbātis	volēbātis	nōlēbātis	mālēbātis
3rd pl.	erant	ībant	ferēbant	volēbant	nōlēbant	mālēbant

66.1.3 Future Active Indicative

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	erō	ībō	feram	volam	nōlam	mālam
2nd sg.	eris	ībīs	ferēs	volēs	nōlēs	mālēs
3rd sg.	erit	ībit	feret	volet	nōlet	mālet
1st pl.	erimus	ībimus	ferēmus	volēmus	nōlēmus	mālēmus
2nd pl.	eritis	ībītis	ferētis	volētis	nōlētis	mālētis
3rd pl.	erunt	ībunt	ferent	volent	nōlent	mālent

66.1.4 Perfect Active Indicative

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	fuī	īvī or iī	tulī	voluī	nōluī	māluī
2nd sg.	fuistī	īstī	tulistī	voluistī	nōluistī	māluistī
3rd sg.	fuit	iit	tulit	voluit	nōluit	māluit
1st pl.	fuimus	iimus	tulimus	voluimus	nōluimus	māluimus
2nd pl.	fuistis	īstis	tulistis	voluistis	nōluistis	māluistis
3rd pl.	fuērunt	iērunt	tulērunt	voluērunt	nōluērunt	māluērunt

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
3rd pl. alt.	fuēre	īere	tulēre	voluēre	nōluēre	māluēre

66.1.5 Pluperfect Active Indicative

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	fueram	ieram	tuleram	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
2nd sg.	fuerās	ierās	tulerās	voluerās	nōluerās	māluerās
3rd sg.	fuerat	ierat	tulerat	voluerat	nōluerat	māluerat
1st pl.	fuerāmus	ierāmus	tulerāmus	voluerāmus	nōluerāmus	māluerāmus
2nd pl.	fuerātis	ierātis	tulerātis	voluerātis	nōluerātis	māluerātis
3rd pl.	fuerant	ierant	tulerant	voluerant	nōluerant	māluerant

66.1.6 Future Perfect Active Indicative

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	fuerō	ierō	tulerō	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō
2nd sg.	fueris	ieris	tuleris	volueris	nōlueris	mālueris
3rd sg.	fuerit	ierit	tulerit	voluerit	nōluerit	māluerit
1st pl.	fuerimus	ierimus	tulerimus	voluerimus	nōluerimus	māluerimus
2nd pl.	fueritis	ieritis	tuleritis	volueritis	nōlueritis	mālueritis
3rd pl.	fuerint	ierint	tulerint	voluerint	nōluerint	māluerint

66.2 Indicative - Passive (ferō)

66.2.1 Present Passive Indicative

	Singular	Plural
1st	feror	ferimur
2nd	ferris	ferimini
3rd	fertur	feruntur

66.2.2 Imperfect Passive Indicative

	Singular	Plural
1st	ferēbar	ferēbāmur
2nd	ferēbāris	ferēbāmini
3rd	ferēbātur	ferēbantur

66.2.3 Future Passive Indicative

	Singular	Plural
1st	ferar	ferēmur
2nd	ferēris	ferēmini
3rd	ferētur	ferentur

66.2.4 Perfect Passive Indicative

	Singular	Plural
1st	lātus, -a, -um sum	lātī, -ae, -a sumus
2nd	lātus, -a, -um es	lātī, -ae, -a estis
3rd	lātus, -a, -um est	lātī, -ae, -a sunt

66.2.5 Pluperfect Passive Indicative

	Singular	Plural
1st	lātus, -a, -um eram	lātī, -ae, -a erāmus
2nd	lātus, -a, -um erās	lātī, -ae, -a erātis
3rd	lātus, -a, -um erat	lātī, -ae, -a erant

66.2.6 Future Perfect Passive Indicative

	Singular	Plural
1st	lātus, -a, -um erō	lātī, -ae, -a erimus
2nd	lātus, -a, -um eris	lātī, -ae, -a eritis
3rd	lātus, -a, -um erit	lātī, -ae, -a erunt

66.3 Subjunctive - Active

66.3.1 Present Active Subjunctive

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	sim	eam	feram	velim	nōlim	mālim
2nd sg.	sīs	eās	ferās	velis	nōlis	mālis
3rd sg.	sit	eat	ferat	velit	nōlit	mālit
1st pl.	sīmus	eāmus	ferāmus	velīmus	nōlīmus	mālīmus
2nd pl.	sītis	eātis	ferātis	velītis	nōlītis	mālītis
3rd pl.	sint	eant	ferant	velint	nōlint	mālint

66.3.2 Imperfect Active Subjunctive

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	essem	īrem	ferrem	vellem	nōllem	māllem
2nd sg.	essēs	īrēs	ferrēs	vellēs	nōllēs	māllēs
3rd sg.	esset	īret	ferret	vellet	nōllet	māllet
1st pl.	essēmus	īrēmus	ferrēmus	vellēmus	nōllēmus	māllēmus
2nd pl.	essētis	īrētis	ferrētis	vellētis	nōllētis	māllētis
3rd pl.	essent	īrent	ferrent	vellent	nōllent	māllent

66.3.3 Perfect Active Subjunctive

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	fuerim	ierim	tulerim	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
2nd sg.	fuerīs	ierīs	tulerīs	voluerīs	nōluerīs	māluerīs
3rd sg.	fuerit	ierit	tulerit	voluerit	nōluerit	māluerit
1st pl.	fuerīmus	ierīmus	tulerīmus	voluerīmus	nōluerīmus	māluerīmus
2nd pl.	fuerītis	ierītis	tulerītis	voluerītis	nōluerītis	māluerītis
3rd pl.	fuerint	ierint	tulerint	voluerint	nōluerint	māluerint

66.3.4 Pluperfect Active Subjunctive

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	fuissem	īsem	tulissem	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem
2nd sg.	fuissēs	īssēs	tulissēs	voluissēs	nōluissēs	māluissēs
3rd sg.	fuisset	īset	tulisset	voluisset	nōluisset	māluisset
1st pl.	fuissēmus	īssēmus	tulissēmus	voluissēmus	nōluissēmus	māluissēmus
2nd pl.	fuissētis	īssētis	tulissētis	voluissētis	nōluissētis	māluissētis
3rd pl.	fuissent	īssent	tulissent	voluissent	nōluissent	māluissent

66.4 Subjunctive - Passive (ferō)

66.4.1 Present Passive Subjunctive

	Singular	Plural
1st	ferar	ferāmur
2nd	ferāris	ferāminī
3rd	ferātur	ferantur

66.4.2 Imperfect Passive Subjunctive

	Singular	Plural
1st	ferrer	ferrēmur
2nd	ferrēris	ferrēminī
3rd	ferrētur	ferrentur

66.4.3 Perfect Passive Subjunctive

	Singular	Plural
1st	lātus, -a, -um sim	lātī, -ae, -a sīmus
2nd	lātus, -a, -um sīs	lātī, -ae, -a sītis
3rd	lātus, -a, -um sit	lātī, -ae, -a sint

66.4.4 Pluperfect Passive Subjunctive

	Singular	Plural
1st	lātus, -a, -um essem	lātī, -ae, -a essēmus
2nd	lātus, -a, -um essēs	lātī, -ae, -a essētis
3rd	lātus, -a, -um esset	lātī, -ae, -a essent

66.5 Infinitives

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō
Pres. Act.	esse	īre	ferre	velle	nolle
Pres. Pass.			ferī		
Perf. Act.	fuisse	īsse	tulisse	voluisse	nōluisse
Perf. Pass.			lātus esse		
Fut. Act.	futūrus esse / fōre	itūrus esse	lātūrus esse		
Fut. Pass.			lātum īrī		

66.6 Gerunds and Gerundives

	eō	ferō
Gerund	eundum	ferendum
Gerundive	eundus, -a, -um	ferendus, -a, -um

67 Pronouns - Paradigms

· TOC {;toc}

67.1 Demonstratives

Note that demonstrative pronouns can also modify nouns and thus serve as demonstrative *adjectives*.

67.1.1 *hic, haec, hoc* - this, these

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	hic	haec	hoc
Genitive	huius	huius	huius
Dative	huic	huic	huic
Accusative	hunc	hanc	hoc
Ablative	hōc	hāc	hōc

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	hī	hae	haec
Genitive	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dative	hīs	hīs	hīs
Accusative	hōs	hās	haec

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Ablative	hīs	hīs	hīs

67.1.2 *ille, illa, illud* - that, those

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	ille	illa	illud
Genitive	illīus	illīus	illīus
Dative	illī	illī	illī
Accusative	illum	illam	illud
Ablative	illō	illā	illō

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	illī	illae	illa
Genitive	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dative	illīs	illīs	illīs
Accusative	illōs	illās	illa
Ablative	illīs	illīs	illīs

67.2 Intensives

Note that intensive pronouns can also modify nouns and thus serve as intensive *adjectives*.

67.2.1 *ipse, ipsa, ipsum* - the very ____, ____self

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	ipse	ipsa	ipsum
Genitive	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius
Dative	ipsi	ipsi	ipsi
Accusative	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
Ablative	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	ipsi	ipsae	ipsa
Genitive	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dative	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
Accusative	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Ablative	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis

67.3 Personal

67.3.1 *is, ea, id* - he, she, it, they (3rd person)

Note that the 3rd person personal pronoun can also modify nouns and thus serve as a demonstrative *adjective*; this demonstrative has a more general force and doesn't indicate distance from the speaker in the way that *hic* or *ille* do.

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	is	ea	id
Genitive	eius	eius	eius
Dative	eī	eī	eī
Accusative	eum	eam	id
Ablative	eō	eā	eō

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	eī / iī	eae	ea
Genitive	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dative	eīs	eīs	eīs
Accusative	eōs	eās	ea
Ablative	eīs	eīs	eīs

67.3.2 *ego* - I, me, we, us (1st person)

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	ego	nōs
Genitive	meī	nostrum / nostrī
Dative	mihi	nōbīs
Accusative	mē	nōs
Ablative	mē	nōbīs

67.3.3 *tū* - you, you all (2nd person)

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	tū	vōs
Genitive	tuī	vestrum / vestrī
Dative	tibi	vōbīs
Accusative	tē	vōs
Ablative	tē	vōbīs

67.4 Reflexive

67.4.1 1st person (myself, ourselves)

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	—	—
Genitive	meī	nostrum / nostrī
Dative	mihi	nōbīs
Accusative	mē	nōs
Ablative	mē	nōbīs

67.4.2 2nd person (yourself, yourselves)

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	—	—
Genitive	tuī	vestrum / vestrī
Dative	tibi	vōbīs
Accusative	tē	vōs
Ablative	tē	vōbīs

67.4.3 3rd person (himself, herself, itself, themselves)

Case	Sing./Pl.
Nominative	—
Genitive	suī
Dative	sibi
Accusative	sē
Ablative	sē

67.5 Interrogative

67.5.1 *quis, quid* - who? which? what?

Singular

Case	M/F	N
Nominative	quis	quid
Genitive	cuius	cuius
Dative	cui	cui
Accusative	quem	quid
Ablative	quō	quō

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	quī	quae	quae
Genitive	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dative	quibus	quibus	quibus
Accusative	quōs	quās	quae

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Ablative	quibus	quibus	quibus

67.6 Relative

67.6.1 *quī, quae, quod* - who, which, that

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	quī	quae	quod
Genitive	cuius	cuius	cuius
Dative	cui	cui	cui
Accusative	quem	quam	quod
Ablative	quō	quā	quō

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	quī	quae	quae
Genitive	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dative	quibus	quibus	quibus
Accusative	quōs	quās	quae
Ablative	quibus	quibus	quibus

68 Vocabulary lists

The lists linked below give dictionary forms and very brief definitions for ca. 250 of the most frequently occurring words in Hyginus' *Fabulae*. You can find very full entries with examples of usage in the searchable online version of Lewis and Short's *Latin Dictionary* (from Furman University).

These 250 terms represent roughly 2/3 of all the words in Hyginus' text!

The vocabulary lists use j and v for consonantal sounds, i and u for vocalic sounds. This is the same spelling convention that you will find in the Lewis-Short Dictionary. Remember that we often use texts with different spelling conventions (e.g., *i* for both consonantal and vocalic sounds), so that to find a vocabulary entry for a form like *iussit* (third singular perfect active indicative), you would look under j to find *jubeo*, *jubēre*, *jussi*, *jussus*.

69 Prepositions in Hyginus, *Fabulae*

- ab or a+ *abl*: away from
- ad + *acc*: towards
- apud + *acc*: at, with, by, near
- cum + *abl*: with
- de + *abl*: from, down from
- ex + *abl*: out of
- in + *abl*: in
- in + *acc*: into
- inter + *acc*: between, among
- ob + *acc*: on account of
- per + *acc*: through
- post + *acc*: after
- pro + *abl*: in front of, on behalf of
- propter + *acc*: on account of
- super + *acc*: above, on top of

70 Pronouns in Hyginus, *Fabulae*

- ego: *personal pronoun*, I
- hic, haec, hoc: *demonstrative pronoun*, this one
- ille, illa, illud: *demonstrative pronoun*, that one
- ipse: *intensifying pronoun*, **he** (himself), **she** herself
- is, ea, id: *demonstrative pronoun*, he, she, it
- qui, quae, quod: *relative pronoun*, who, which
- quis, quid: *interrogative pronoun*, who, what
- quisque: *indefinite pronoun*, whoever
- sui: *reflexive pronoun* himself, herself

71 Most frequent verbs in Hyginus, *Fabulae*

- accipio, accipere, accepi, acceptus: *to receive, to perceive*
- adduco, adducere, adduxi, adductus: *to lead or conduct*
- aio (*irregular, exists only in a few forms*): *to say, assert*
- amitto, amittere, amisi, amissus: *to dismiss, send away, to lose*
- amo, amare, amavi, amatus: *to love*
- appello, appellare, appelavi, appellatus: *to address, name*
- audio, audire, audivi, auditus: *to hear*
- cano, canere, cecini, cantus: *to sing*
- capio, capere, cepi, captus: *to seize*
- coepio, coepere, coepi, coeptus: *to begin*
- cognosco, cognoscere, cognovi, cognitus: *to know, become acquainted with*
- commuto, commutare, commutavi, commutatus: *to change, interchange*
- comprimo, comprimere, compressi, compressus: *to squeeze together, to repress*
- concumbo, concumbere, concubui, concubitus: *to sleep with*
- conicio (*or coicio, or conjicio*), conicere, conjeci, conjectus: *to cast, to connect, to discuss*
- constituo, constituere, constitui, constitutus: *to establish, prepare*
- consumo, consumere, consumpsi, consumptus: *to devour*
- contendo, contendere, contendi, contentus: *to extend, to exert, to strive with*
- converto, convertere, converti, conversus: *to turn, alter*
- cresco, crescere, crevi, cretus: *to be born, appear*
- dedo, dedere, dedidi, deditus: *to give away, give up, surrender*
- defero, deferre, detuli, delatus: *to carry away, convey*
- dico, dicere, dixi, dictus: *to say*
- do, dare, dedi, datus: *to give*
- duco, ducere, duxi, ductus: *to lead*
- eo, ire, ii or ivi, -: *to go*
- exeo, exire, exivi or exii, exitus: *to go out*
- expono, exponere, exposui, expositus: *to set forth, expose*
- facio, facere, feci, factus: *to make*
- fero, ferre, tuli, latus: *to bear, carry*

- fio, fiēri, -, factus: *to become, be produced*
- habeo, habēre, habui, habitus: *to have*
- immolo, immolare, immolavi, immolatus: *to sacrifice*
- impono, imponēre, imposui, impositus: *to set upon or over*
- intereo, interire, interii or iterivi, iteritus: *to perish, be ruined*
- interficio, interficēre, interfeci, interfectus: *destroy, kill*
- invenio, invenire, inveni, inventus: *to discover, find out*
- irascor, irasci, -, iratus: *to be angry, enraged*
- jubeo, jubēre, jussi, jussus: *to order, prescribe*
- jungo, jungēre, junxi, junctus: *to connect, join together*
- libero, liberare, liberavi, liberatus: *to free*
- libet, libēre, libuit, libitus (*impersonal*): *to be pleasing or agreeable*
- loco, locare, locavi, locatus: *to place, arrange*
- mitto, mittēre, misi, missus: *to send*
- moneo, monēre, monui, monitus: *to war*
- morior, mori, -, mortuus: *to die*
- nascor, nasci, -, natus: *to be born*
- neco, necare, necavi, necatus: *to slay*
- nego, negare, negavi, negatus: *to say no, refuse*
- nitor, niti, -, nissus or nixus: *to lean on, to strive for*
- nolo, nolle, nolui, -: *to wish...not, to be unwilling*
- nomino, nominare, nominavi, nominatus: *to name, call by name*
- obicio or objicio, obicēre, objeci, objectus: *to throw before, oppose*
- occido, occidēre, occidi, occisus: *strike down, slay*
- ostendo, ostendēre, ostendi, ostensus: *to show, expose*
- pareo, parēre, parui, paritus: *to be present, to wait on*
- pario, parēre, peperii, paritus: *to bear, give birth to*
- percutio, percutēre, percussi, percussus: *to strike, thrust or pierce through*
- perduco, perducēre, perduxii, perductus: *to guide, lead through*
- pereo, perire, perivi or perii, peritus: *to pass away, vanish*
- persequor, persequi, -, persecutus: *to follow, chase, pursue*
- pervenio, pervenire, perveni, perventus: *to come to, arrive at*
- peto, petēre, petivi or petii, petitus: *to attack, demand, seek*
- polliceor, pollicēri, -, pollicitus: *to promise*
- pono, ponēre, posui, positus: *to place*
- possum, posse, potui, -: *to be able*
- praecipito, praecipitare, praecipitavi, praecipitatus: *to cast down, to press, hasten*
- procreo, procreare, procreavi, procreatus: *to bring forth, beget*

- proficio, proficere, profeci, profectus: *to advance, make progress, obtain*
- proficiscor, proficisci, -, profectus: *to set out, depart*
- profugio, profugere, profugi, -: *to flee, escape*
- quaero, quaerere, quaesivi, quaesitus: *to seek for, acquire*
- rapio, rapere, rapui, raptus: *to seize and carry off*
- recipio, recipere, recepi, receptus: *regain, recover*
- redeo, redire, redivi or redii, reditus: *to go or come back, return*
- refero, referre, rettuli or retuli, relatus: *to return, restore*
- regno, regnare, regnavi, regnatus: *to rule*
- respondeo, respondere, respondi, responsus: *to answer, reply*
- rogo, rogare, rogavi, rogatus: *to ask*
- sacro, sacrare, sacravi, sacratus: *to consecrate, dedicate*
- sepelio, sepelire, sepelivi or sepelii, sepultus: *to bury*
- servo, servare, servavi, servatus: *to save, preserve*
- soleo, solere, solui, solitus: *to be accustomed*
- sum, esse, fui, futurus: *to be*
- tollo, tollere, sustuli, sublatu: *to raise up, elevate*
- trado, tradere, tradidi, traditus: *to hand over, deliver, surrender*
- venio, venire, veni, ventus: *to come*
- video, videre, vidi, visus: *to see*
- vinco, vincere, vici, victum: *to defeat, conquer*
- vivo, vivere, vixi, victus: *to live, be alive*
- voco, vocare, vocavi, vocatus: *to call together, summon*
- volo, velle, volui, -: *to wish, want*

72 Most frequent nouns in Hyginus, *Fabulae*

- amor, amoris *m*: *love*
- annus, anni *m*: *year*
- aper, apri *m*: *wild boar*
- aqua, aquae *f*: *water*
- arbor, arboris *f*: *tree*
- arma, armorum *n* (*pl* only): *arms, weapons*
- aurum, auri *n*: *gold*
- avis, avis *f*: *bird*
- beneficium, benefici *n*: *s*
- canis, canis *m* or *f*: *dog*
- caput, capitis *n*: *head*
- conjugium, conjugii *n*: *marriage*
- conjunx, conjugis *m* or *f*: *husband, wife*
- corpus, corporis *n*: *body*
- deus, dei *m*: *god*
- dies, diei *m*: *day*
- draco, draconis *m*: *serpent, dragon*
- dux, ducis *m*: *leader*
- equus, equi *m*: *horse*
- femina, feminae *f*: *woman*
- fides, fidei *f*: *faith, trustworthiness*
- filia, filiae *f*: *daughter*
- filius, filii *m*: *son*
- flumen, fluminis *n*: *river*
- forma, formae *f*: *shape, appearance*
- frater, fratris *m*: *brother*
- fulmen, fulminis *n*: *lightning*
- gladius, gladii *m*: *sword*
- homo, hominis *m*: *human being*
- hospes, hospitis *m*: *host, guest*

- hospitium, hospitii *n*: *hospitality*
- infans, infantis *m* or *f*: *infant, small child*
- insula, insulae *f*: *island*
- liber, liberi *m*: *child*
- locus, loci *m*: *place*
- ludus, ludi *m*: *play, game*
- mare, maris *n*: *sea*
- mater, matris *f*: *mother*
- mons, montis *m*: *mountain*
- mors, mortis *f*: *death*
- munus, muneris *n*: *work, service, job*
- murus, muri *m*: *city wall*
- navis, navis *f*: *ship*
- nomen, nominis *n*: *name*
- nox, noctis *f*: *night*
- numerus, numeri *m*: *number*
- nutrix, nutricis *f*: *nurse*
- nympa, nympae *f*: *nymph*
- oppidum, oppidi *n*: *town*
- parens, parentis *m*: *parent*
- pars, partis *f*: *part, portion*
- pastor, pastoris *m*: *shepherd*
- pater, patris *m*: *father*
- patria, patriae *f*: *home country*
- pecus, pecoris *n*: *cattle, herd*
- pellis, pellis *f*: *skin, hide*
- pes, pedis *m*: *foot*
- proci, proci *m*: *suitors*
- puer, pueri *m*: *boy*
- regnum, regni *n*: *kingdom*
- res, rei *f*: *thing, matter, affair*
- rex, regis *m*: *king*
- sacerdos, sacerdotis *m* or *f*: *priest, priestess*
- sagitta, sagittae *f*: *arrow*
- sepultura, sepulturae *f*: *burial*
- signum, signi *n*: *sign, token*
- sol, solis *m*: *sun*
- soror, sororis *f*: *sister*

- sors, sortis *f*: *lot, fate*
- stadium, stadii *n*: *stadium*
- taurus, tauri *m*: *bull*
- templum, templi *n*: *temple*
- tempus, temporis *n*: *time*
- terra, terrae *f*: *land, earth*
- uxor, uxoris *f*: *wife*
- vestis, vestis *f*: *clothing*
- vir, viri *m*: *man*
- virgo, virginis *f*: *young woman*
- voluntas, voluntatis *f*: *wish, will*

73 Most frequent adjectives in Hyginus, *Fabulae*

- alius, alia, aliud: *another*
- alter, altera, alterum: *other (of two)*
- ceterus, cetera, ceterum: *the other; the remainder*
- duo, duae, duo (**irregular**): *two*
- idem, eadem, idem: *the same*
- inferus, infera, inferum: *lower*
- liber, libera, liberum: *free*
- magnus, magna, magnum: *great, large*
- mortalis, mortale: *mortal, subject to death*
- multus, multa, multum: *much (sg.), many (pl.)*
- omnis, omnis: *each (sg.), all (pl.)*
- primus, prima, primum: *first*
- regius, regia, regium: *royal, kingly*
- sacer, sacra, sacrum: *holy, sacred*
- septem (*indeclinable*): *seven*
- socius, socia, socium: *allied*
- suus, sua, suum: ****** reflexive possessive adjective, *his own, her own*
- tantus, tanta, tantum: *so great*
- unus, una, unum: *a single*

74 Most frequent adverbs in Hyginus, *Fabulae*

- ibi: *there*
- inde: *from there*
- ita: *so*
- item: *likewise, also*
- non: *not*
- postea: *later*
- tunc: *then*

75 Most frequent conjunctions in Hyginus, *Fabulae*

- *atque or ac*: and, and besides, and even
- *autem*: however, nonetheless
- *cum*: when
- *dum*: while
- *et*: and
- *itaque*: and so, accordingly
- *nam*: for
- *neque or nec*: not, and not, also not
- *ne*: *conjunction introducing several kinds of negative clauses*
- *postquam*: after
- *quia*: since
- *quod*: because
- *quoniam*: since
- *sed*: but
- *sive*: or
- *si*: if
- *ubi*: where, when
- *unde*: from where
- *ut*: *conjunction introducing several kinds of subordinate clauses*